

<b>401</b> It's <b>extraordinary / incredible that</b> the Black Baroness had managed to <b>stand `up to / stand `against / challenge / defy / the authority</b> of her husband.	* utroligt at - * sætte sig op imod > * = * udfordre > * trodse > * ngs. myndighed * ... ng.
Her <b>standing against / up to</b> the Black Baron, is an event in which the baroness <b>reigns supreme</b> .	* rangere > * i top ~ være i højsædet
The White Baron and his son together with the Black Baroness and her daughter are called to the court by the King.	* * forvirret
It has been a <b>tumultuous</b> time in their life.	* samle ( information ) * udtrykke / vise >
The King wants to <b>amass</b> information, <b>express / show</b> <sup>ê`mas</sup>	* påskønnelse * sammensvorende * bedrift * ukuelig ( mod ) * modgang
<b>10</b> his <b>appreciation</b> , and praise the <b>conspirators' exploits</b> . <sup>kên`spirêtêz</sup>	* aftvinge ngt. fra ng. * overvinde ngt. * genvordigheder
Showing <b>indomitable</b> courage in the face of <b>adversity</b> , the baroness in particular <b>extorts</b> admiration <b>from</b> the King.	* anerkendelse, hyldest * dygtig hædersbevisning behændig
Having <b>overcome</b> many <b>adversities</b> , all three of them receive an <b>accolade</b> from the king for their <b>deft</b> leadership.	* løfte om at - * kamp mod ng.
The King allows the White Baron to incorporate the disputed land into his barony in return for a <b>promise to</b> continue the <b>tilt at</b> anarchistic barons.	* vilkårlig egenrådig * tilrane sig ngt.
Ruling their baronies by <b>arbitrary</b> decisions, many barons have managed to <b>usurp</b> power. <sup>ju~`zê~p</sup>	* vippe / tippe > * ( magt- ) balancen * over mod ng. * væk fra ng.
<b>20</b> Growing anarchy threatens to <b>tilt the balance ( of power )</b> <b>in favour</b> of the barons and <b>away from</b> the King.	* tippe / vende sig til fordel for ng. * vende ngt. ufordelagtigt for ng.
As the situation seems to <b>tilt in favour of</b> the barons the crises threatens to <b>tilt the situation away from</b> the King.	* holde i ave * drejning mod ngt. * hælde mod ngt.
So the King must <b>keep a curb on</b> baronial anarchy in order to prevent a <b>tilt toward(s)</b> baronial anarchy / prevent the situation from <b>tilting toward(s)</b> anarchy.	* bekymret ved ngt. * tummel * lægge hindring i vejen for ng. uro * bremse / dæmpe * udnyttelse tøjle / styre ngt.
<b>30</b> The <b>arbitrary</b> barons must be <b>foiled in</b> their attempts to <b>arrogate ( to themselves )</b> more and more power.	* egenmægtig * forhindre i ngt. / -rådig * tilrane ( sig ) ngt.
The King must <b>foil</b> the barons' plots and plans, <b>at (the) worst / worst of all</b> an attempt to <b>usurp</b> the throne.	* forpurre / ( for- ) hindre ngt. * i værste fald * i værste fald / allerværst * tilrane sig ngt.
He must <b>thwart</b> the <b>usurers'</b> ambitions, plans and efforts, <b>if the worst comes to the worst /</b>	* forpurre / ( for- ) hindre ngt. * magttilraner * hvis det værste skulle ske
<b>A&amp; if worst comes to worst</b> , an attempt to <b>usurp</b> the King.	* = * tage magten over ng.
As the White Baron and the baroness now <b>emerge as</b> <b>key figures</b> in the King's campaign against tyrannical barons, the barons are <b>thwarted in</b> their attempts at <b>usurpation</b> .	* træde frem / fremstå som ngt. * nøgleperson * ( fo- ) hindre ng. i ngt. * magttilraning

<b>402</b> The end of the <b>tumultuous</b> years of feud could	* forvirret voldsom	
<b>`herald</b> a new <b>era</b> of peace.	* indvarsle >	* æra periode
Every squire looks forward to be <b>knighted</b> by the King	* ~ udnævnet / slået til ridder	
and <b>receive a knighthood</b> .	* modtage ridderskab	
The King wants to <b>dub</b> the White Baron's son <b>a knight</b>	* slå ng. til ridder	
The King decides to <b>confer knighthood (up)on</b> him.	* tildele ng. ridderskab	
When the King <b>`designates</b> him <b>(as) a knight</b>	* udpege ng. til >	* ridder
he <b>makes</b> him <b>a knight</b> .	* gøre ng. Til >	* =
The White Baron, the Baroness and court officials attend	*	
<b>10</b> the <b>accolade</b> , the ceremony of <b>conferring knighthood</b> .	* akkolade ridderslag	* overføre / tildele ngt. * ridderskab
<b>In the accolade</b> the king will strike the candidate lightly	* ~ ved udnævnelser til ridder	
upon the shoulder with the flat of a sword.	*	
The King <b>solemnly gives</b> the White Baron's son	* højtideligt give ng. >	
the <b>accolade</b> , a light blow upon the shoulder with the flat of	* ridderslag	
a sword.	*	
The White Baron's son <b>proudly receives</b> the <b>accolade</b> .	* stolt	* modtage ...
When he <b>swears</b> an <b>oath</b> / a <b>vow</b> of <b>allegiance</b> to the King,	* sværge > * en ed / et løfte om >	* troskab / loyalitet overfor ng.
he <b>swears / pledges allegiance</b> and <b>loyalty</b> to the King.	* sværge / love ...	
As he now <b>owes allegiance</b> to the King,	* skyldge ng. troskab	
<b>20</b> he has a duty to <b>give allegiance</b> to the King.	* yde ...	
<b>Taking</b> an <b>oath of chivalry</b> , he <b>`solemnly</b> promises	* aflægge ...	* ridderlighed ( = ridderløfte ) * højtidelig
to assist the King by doing <b>knightly deeds of chivalry</b> .	* ridderlig	* bedrift dåd * ridderskab
As a knight, the son must have his own <b>knightly</b> armour	* riddermæssig	
and equipment (U): a horse, a sword, a <b>suit of armour</b> ,	* rustning	
a ( <b>coat of</b> ) <b>mail</b> or a <b>chain mail</b> and a surcoat	* brynje	* ringbrynje
with a <b>coat of arms</b> .	* våbenskjold	
Making a suit of armour, the <b>armourer rivets</b> metal plates	* våbensmed	* nitte nagle
and leather together, punching in <b>rivets</b> .	* nitte nagle	
The baron's son is a horse <b>fiend / fanatic / maniac</b> .	* fanatiker, sværmer, tosse	
<b>30</b> Years ago the son got a <b>male foal sired</b> by the baron's	* han-	* føl * avle
finest <b>stallion</b> .	* hingst	
The <b>sire</b> and <b>dam</b> are only used for breeding.	* fader-	* moderdyr
Next time the <b>mare foaled</b> , it gave birth to a female foal,	* hoppe	* fole
a fine <b>filly</b> .	* hoppeføl	
The son has carefully trained the young male horse	*	
so the <b>colt</b> is now <b>ready to</b> serve as his knightly stallion.	* hingsteføl plag	* parat / i stand til at -
A horse may <b>spill / unseat</b> its rider.	* kaste ng. af	
Dressed in his suit or armour, a rider risks <b>serious injuries</b>	* alvorlige	* kvæstelser
if he <b>takes a spill on</b> his horse.	* komme ud for et fald på / fra ngt.	

<b>403</b> A knight has to have a page and a squire in his service.	*
If anything goes wrong either the page or something else	*
could always be accused of <b>being the villain of the piece</b> .	* skurken, ~ den / det der er skyld i ulykkerne
Serving as a knight, a squire or a page is a <b>taxing</b> job.	* krævende
A knight must have the <b>requisite qualifications</b> for the job.	* fornødne, påkrævne                      * kvalifikationer til ngt.
<b>Requisite</b> skills and experience in <b>chivalry</b>	* nødvendig, påkræven                      * ridderskab
are a <b>requisite for entry into</b> knighthood.	* krav / nødvendighed for ngt.              * indtræden i ngt.
The knights <b>educate</b> the squires and pages <b>in</b> chivalry:	* uddanne ng. i ngt.
the sum of ideal qualifications of a knight, including courtesy,	*
<b>10</b> generosity, <b>valour</b> , dexterity in arms and art of war.	* tapperhed, mod
The apprenticeship as page and squire is more <b>taxing</b>	* krævende
<b>than (it) is generally believed</b> .	* end almindeligt antaget
Some of the problems <b>tax</b> the apprentices;	* bebyrde ng.
the questions really <b>tax</b> their <b>brains</b> .	* udfordre ngs. tanker
The pupils sometimes <b>tax</b> the knight's <b>patience</b> .	* sætte ngs. tålmodighed på prøve trække veksler på ngs. ...
When the baron's son and his apprentices practice <b>fencing</b> ,	* fægtning
they <b>fence</b> with <b>foils</b> .	* fægte    * kårde
As the White Baron's son is <b>engaged to</b> the daughter of	* blive trolovet til / forlovet med ng.
the Black Baron, the couple are <b>engaged to be married</b> .	* ... for at blive gift
<b>20</b> She is his <b>fiancée</b> and he is her <b>fiancé</b> .	* trolovet, forlovet                              * =
The <b>engaged couple</b> shall marry soon after their turbulent	* forlovede par
and tumultuous <b>courtship</b> .	* forlovelsestid
People <b>from far and near</b> are invited, and the <b>guest list</b>	* fra nær og fjern                      * gæste-                      * liste
<b>reads like a roll-call</b> of men and women of honour.	* ~ lyder som > * navne- * mænd / kvinder ⇔ hæders- opråb af >
<b>It's a matter of common courtesy to acknowledge</b> a letter.	* ... et spørgsmål (sag)              * bekræfte modtagelsen af / om almindelig høflighed              takke for ngt.
<b>It's only common courtesy to</b> do so.	* kun / blot ...
People should at least <b>have the courtesy to</b> write and say	* have høflighed nok til at
they'd <b>be prevented from coming</b> / are <b>otherwise engaged</b> .	* forhindret i at komme / optaget af noget andet
<b>Ablaze with</b> yellow and green, the church is <b>decorated with</b>	* ~ strålende af ( farve )                      * udsmykket med >
<b>30</b> a <b>dazzling array</b> of <b>daffodils</b> as bright <b>heralds</b> of spring.	* blændende * række * påske lilje * budbringer af ngt. af skønhed væld
<b>Snowdrops, winter aconites</b> and <b>crocuses flower</b> while	* vintergæk              * erantis              * krokus              * blomstre
it's still winter, while the <b>white narcissus</b> ( pl: narcissi )	* pinselilje
<b>flowers</b> later than the daffodil.	* blomstre
All the guests invited <b>have / keep it in mind / view</b>	* ~ holde sig for øje / være opmærksom på >
<b>to show up a decent interval</b> before the event.	* at -                      * anstændig, passende              * stykke tid
It's a sacrilege to show up <b>at a wrong</b> and <b>bad moment</b> .	* på >                      * forkert                      * dårligt                      * tidspunkt ubejligt
The church keeps most of it's religious <b>curiosities</b>	* kuriositet
locked up but the church itself is a historical <b>curiosity</b> .	* usædvanlig ting * =

<b>404</b> The aristocracy <b>pay courtesy calls on</b> the King.	* aflægge høflighedsvisit hos ng.
The White Baron fully realizes that `progress is <b>shackled</b>	* hæmmet af ngt.
by a <b>mass of</b> feudal regulations.	* mængde ( af ) * regulativ, ~ forordning
The White Baron <b>assiduously courts</b> the court officials.	* flittigt * bejle til ng.
The White Baron <b>pays a courtesy visit to</b> the King.	* =
<b>Within the time allotted</b> , the King lets him know that he	* indenfor den afsatte / tildelte tid
<sup>ê`låtid</sup>	
<b>opposes shackling</b> the trade <b>with</b> heavy taxes and duties.	* modsætte sig / * hæmme ngt. med ngt. kæmpe imod ngt.
The production has its basis in the village, a <b>cluster of</b>	* klynge
houses and households, usually joined together by a common	
<b>10 livelihood</b> such as farming, fishing, <b>wooding, mining</b> , etc.	* levebrød * skovbrug * minedrift udkomme & brændesamling
In some <b>deprived</b> areas, the <b>deprived</b> people live without	* forarmet * & afsavnidende
having the things necessary for a comfortable and happy life.	
The baron <b>frees</b> the villeins <b>from villeinage / villainage</b>	* frigive ng. fra > * livegenskab, hoveri
on condition that they agree to rent their farms.	
The <b>villeins</b> become <b>freeholders; tenant farmers</b>	* hovbonde * frie lejere * forpagter
and <b>villagers</b> .	* landsbyboer
By giving the farmers the possibility for making a profit	
of their own the White Baron encourages <b>exploitation of</b>	* udnyttelse af ngt.
agricultural production especially <b>wool</b> .	* uld
<b>20</b> The White Baron's <b>vision</b> is being <b>heralded as</b>	* vision * ( blive ) udråbt som ngt.
a <b>blueprint for</b> the future of the barony.	* blåtryk, ~ plan / rettesnor for ngt.
<b>Allocating</b> land and money <b>for</b> the foundation of a <b>mill</b> ,	* afsætte / tildele / bevil(li)ge ngt. til > * mølle
<sup>`alêkeiting</sup>	
the baron <b>allocates</b> some land and money ( <b>to</b> the villagers )	* - - - ( til ng. )
He <b>allocates</b> the villagers a piece of land and some money.	* tildele ng. ngt.
So <b>alloting</b> land and money <b>to</b> the foundation of a mill,	* uddele ngt. til ngt.
<sup>ê`loting</sup>	
the baron <b>allots</b> land and money ( <b>to</b> the villagers ).	* - - - ( til ng. )
He <b>allots</b> the villagers a piece of land and a sum of money	* tildele ng. ngt.
The baron's <b>allocation of</b> land and <b>allocations of</b> money	* tildeling af ngt.
<b>provide a breeding ground for private enterprise.</b>	* skabe grobund for > * privat initiativ
<b>30</b> The <b>allotment</b> of land and the <b>allotments</b> of money <b>enable</b>	* tildeling * = * sætte ng. i stand til
the villagers to start a <b>business on their own initiative.</b>	* forretninger * på eget initiativ
So a <b>water mill</b> for grinding corn into flour is founded ( <b>by</b> )	* vand- * mølle * >
<b>courtesy of</b> the White Baron's <b>allocations</b> and <b>allotments.</b>	* ~ takket være > * tildeling
When water from the <b>millpond</b> starts turning the <b>mill wheel</b>	* mølledam * mølle- * hjul
and <b>millstone</b> , it's <b>heralded as</b> a way forward in prosperity.	* møllesten * udråbe ngt. som ngt.
<b>It is expected that</b> trade and economy will <b>progress.</b>	* det forventes at - * gøre fremskridt
<sup>prê`gres</sup>	
The baron claims that the <b>rise / increase in</b> production	* stigning i ( produktion )
is the <b>herald</b> of economic recovery.	* varsel om / forløber for ngt.

**405** Later on, **saw, spinning, cloth, cotton, paper, steel,**  
etc. **mills** are founded **round about**.

At the **rolling mill**, the **rolling mill rolls** and **flattens**  
metal **bars** into **sheets** between its **rollers**.

The **conveyor ( belt )** moves on steel **rollers**.

People who work at the mills **settle down** in the villages  
together with tradesmen, shopkeepers and craftsmen.

No more **shackled by** old customs and regulations,  
some townfolks establish business and trading companies

**10** which **thrive on** commercial and economic **exploitation**  
of agricultural and industrial products.

All kinds of goods are brought **into town** and **out of town**.

Experts in the **exploiting** of **mineral resources**  
take steps to **exploit** the **iron ore** from **veins** in the local rock.

Little by little the village grows bigger and gradually  
developes into a larger community, a **town** of hundreds  
or thousands of **inhabitants**, having definite borders  
and certain local powers of government.

The **town `hall** is a **civic** building containing  
**20** the **civic government** which **consists of /**  
**is comprised of / comprises civic leaders.**

In Britain the **civic `centre** is an area where the public  
buildings are, while in the US the **civic center** is a building  
where public entertainments and meetings are held.

Many **citizens** who have a sense of **civic pride**,  
**civic spirit**, and **civic responsibility** feel that they  
**have a responsibility / duty to** serve the town.

So **doing** their **civic duty for** the town a great part of  
the **citizenry** of the town and join the **civic guards** (pl.)

**30** As they **have a responsibility to** the children, the parents,  
the Church, and the schools are **responsible for** teaching  
the children **good citizenship**.

A **town dweller** is either a townsman or townswoman.

Some **townspeople**, townsmen and townswomen,  
rent **allotments** (E) for **growing vegetables**.

**Presenting** new products, **giving a presentation on** them,  
manufacturers and business people are **courting** big city  
distributers and export businesses **with a view to**  
**penetrate** the **emerging** markets of the big cities and abroad.

\* sav- \* spinde- \* klæde- \* bomuld- \* papir- \* stål-  
\* mølle, ~ værk / fabrik \* rundt omkring  
( spinning mill = spinderi )  
\* ~ valseværk \* valsemaskine \* valse > \* udflade >  
\* plade \* bar, stang \* valse  
\* transportbånd \* rulle  
\* slå sig ned  
\*  
\* lænket, ~ bundet af ( skik etc.)  
\*  
\* trives ved ngt. \* udnyttelse  
\*  
\* ind til byen \* ud af ...  
\* << \* mineral \* resurse  
\* udnytte > \* jern- \* malm \* åre  
\*  
\* by  
\* indbygger  
\*  
\* rådhus \* officiel bymæssig  
\* by- \* styre \* bestå af >  
\* er sammensat af > \* omfatte > \* borger- \* ledere  
\* byadministrations- og servicecenter  
\* ~ forsamlingshus  
\*  
\* borger \* borgerstolthed  
\* = \* borgerlig ansvarlighed  
\* have en forpligtelse / pligt til at -  
\* gøre sin pligt  
\* borgerskab \* borgervæbning  
indbyggere  
\* have en forpligtelse overfor ng.  
\* være ansvarlig for at -  
\* borgerdyder  
\* byboer  
\* borgere  
byboerer  
\* kolonihave \* dyrke > \* grøn(t)sager  
\* præsentere / \* give > \* præsentation /  
fremvise ( produkt ) fremvisning af ngt.  
\* bejle til ng.  
\* med henblik på at -  
\* trænge ind på > \* fremdukkende ( marked )



<b>407</b> A rich nobleman <b>from out of town falls for</b> the daughter	* ~ udenbys fra	* falde > for ng.
<b>hook, line and sinker / like a ton of briks.</b>	* krog * line * sænk * som > * ton * mursten ~ helt og aldeles / ~ med voldsom kraft = pladask	
She isn't just one of his <b>`conquests.</b>	* erobring	
The <b>out-of-town</b> aristocrat, wants to <b>take</b> the daughter	* tage ng. >	
<b>out for a night on the town.</b>	* med ud til ngt.	* ~ en tur i byens nattelev
She <b>graciously</b> accepts the young nobleman's invitation.	* venligt, elskværdigt	
So they <b>go out on the town</b> one night.	* tage i byen	
Having easily <b>engaged</b> the young lady <b>in</b> conversation,	* ~ få ng. med ind i ( samtale )	
the gentleman wonders how to <b>raise the subject of</b>	* komme ind på emnet / få rejst spørgsmålet om ngt.	
<b>10 engagement, and get onto the subject of</b> marriage.	* forlovelse	* - - -
He has to <b>broach the prickly subject of</b> settlement <b>to</b> her.	* bringe > på bane * emne * overfor ng. tage hul på >	
It's a <b>thorny subject</b> so he is <b>dreading</b> having to	* ømtåleligt * = frygte / være bange for at -	
<b>broach the subject:</b> to <b>broach the subject with</b> her.	* <<	
Although where to settle is a very <b>touchy subject of</b>	* følsomt * ( samtale-, debat-, diskussions- ) emne	
conversation, debate, and discussion late at night, it's very	*	
much a <b>subject for</b> their conversation, debate and discussion.	* emne for ngt.	
As she has a <b>`quicksilver temperament,</b> he'd wish	* livligt ...	
she'd <b>drop the subject and change the subject.</b>	* droppe / forlade > * emne * skifte ...	
<b>Conveniently,</b> she just then <b>rises gracefully to her feet</b>	* ( meget ) belejligt * rejse sig > * yndefuldt * (op)	
<b>20</b> to go to <b>powder her nose,</b> and when she returns,	* pudre >	* næsen
they conveniently seem to have <b>got off the subject.</b>	* komme væk fra ...	& ~ gå på toilettet
Having <b>let it drop,</b> she apparently <b>keeps off the subject.</b>	* ~ lade det ligge	* holde sig fra ...
So <b>letting the subject drop,</b> he <b>stays off the subject</b> too.	* =	
The daughter <b>keeps a diary.</b>	* føre dagbog	
When the nobleman has to <b>leave town</b> for some time,	* forlade >	* byen
he is the <b>subject of</b> the daughter's <b>diary</b> every evening.	* emne i ngt.	* dagbog
Some subjects have to be considered <b>under a broader /</b>	* under >	* bredere >
<b>wider / larger canvas.</b>	* = / =	* ( lærred ), ~ synsvinkel
<b>For the sake of</b> his business, they have to settle in his	* af hensyn til ngt.	
<b>30 home town,</b> and there is no more to say <b>on the subject.</b>	* hjemby	* om emne
<b>After careful / mature { consideration / deliberation,</b>	* grundig / moden	* overvejelse / eftertanke
<b>on thinking it over, on second thoughts,</b>	* =	
<b>on ( furter ) consideration,</b> the daughter agrees to	* =	
move to the home town of her <b>fiancé.</b>	* forlovede	
When their marriage and <b>wedding day</b> are settled,	* bryllupsdag	
her fiancé <b>goes to town.</b>	* ~ slå sig løs	
He <b>goes to town on</b> organizing the <b>wedding celebrations</b>	* - - - med at -	* bryllups- * højtideligheder
and <b>wedding festivities</b> for his <b>fiancée.</b>	* bryllups-	* festligheder * forlovede
	fi`ånsei E/A fi~a~n`sei	

<b>408</b> The married couple <b>hold / give</b> a <b>wedding reception</b> .	* holde bryllupsreception
Among many other things, the married couple	*
<b>get</b> some <b>oil paintings</b> for a <b>wedding present</b> .	* få > olie- * maleri * i / som > * bryllups- * gave
One artist is <b>revolutionary</b> in both <b>subject matter</b>	* revolutionær * indhold
and technique using bright / <b>delicate</b> / rich <b>shades</b> of colour.	* emne, motiv, tema * nuance
People <b>admire</b> his <b>deft command</b> of technique.	* sart > * beundre ngt. * dygtig * beherskelse af ngt.
<b>Portraits, landscapes, seascapes, townscapes</b>	* portræt * landskab * marinebillede * bymotiv
and <b>cityscapes</b> are popular <b>subjects with</b> most painters.	* søstykke * storbymotiv * motiv hos ng.
<b>Still life(s)</b> is ( are ) popular with some painters.	* stilleben, opstilling
<b>10</b> It takes <b>manual dexterity, deft</b> hands and <b>deft</b> fingers,	* manuel * behændighed * behændig * =
to be a skilful <b>figurative</b> painter.	~ fingernemhed * figurativ
Her husband has studied at a university.	*
As they <b>amass</b> information and knowledge, some students	* samle / ophobe ngt.
<b>glean</b> additional information from select people and books.	* sanke ~ samle ngt. møjsommeligt sammen
The husband reads books <b>on</b> many different <b>subjects</b> .	* om ... emne
Some <b>serious</b> books have an <b>occasional gleam</b> of humour.	* seriøs ( bog ) * lejlighedsvis * glimt af ngt.
A <b>fascinating subject matter</b> makes a novel <b>riveting</b> ;	* fascinerende * indhold * fascinerende
it makes <b>riveting</b> reading.	* = * fængslende
Reading some passages, his eyes are <b>riveted to</b> the text.	* naglet til ngt.
<b>20 Riveted by</b> the action, he is <b>riveted on</b> the novel.	* fascineret af ngt. * naglet til /
He <b>has a good / an excellent command of</b> French.	* have godt styr på ngt. * fængslet af ngt.
His wife <b>has a poor command of</b> grammar.	* ... dårligt ...
In the <b>subject</b> of grammar, it is taught that, in a sentence,	* emne
the <b>subject</b> is a <b>noun / o-f substantive, a noun phrase</b>	* fag
or <b>pronoun</b> representing the person or thing that performs	* subjekt * substantiv * navneforbindelse
the action of the verb about which something is <b>stated</b> or,	grundled navneord
in a passive sentence, that is affected by the action of the verb.	* prænomen * stedord * angivet
The subject and the sentence verb are the main <b>members</b>	*
of a sentence.	* led
<b>30</b> Natural science was the husband's <b>favourite subject</b> .	* favorit- / yndlings- * fag
As <b>subjects of / for</b> his <b>experiments with / on creatures</b> ,	* genstand for > * eksperiment med / på > * skabning
he may use <b>guinea pigs</b> as <b>experimental / research animals</b> ,	( & forsøgsperson ) * marsvin * forsøgs- * dyr
or he may <b>experiment with / on</b> himself as a <b>guinea pig</b> .	* eksperimenterer med / på ngt. * ~ forsøgsdyr
<b>Experimenting with`alchemy</b> as an <b>alchemist</b> ,	* eksperimenterer med ngt. * alkymi * alkymist
he tried to find <b>the philosopher's stone</b> which could change	* " filosofiens sten "
ordinary metals into gold or silver, or make people live forever.	*
He often used <b>quicksilver</b> also called <b>mercury</b>	* kviksølv * mercurium
as <b>subject of / for</b> the experiments to produce gold.	* grundlag for ngt.
All theories and results turned out to be a <b>mare's nest</b> .	* noget værre rod, en skrøne / and
	meêz

<b>409</b> The <b>town crier</b> shouts news.	* byudråber	
The <b>crier</b> makes an official announcement about	* =	
the King's visit.	*	
When the King <b>is in town</b> , the <b>whole town</b> turn out to watch	* være i byen	* hele byen
the King and his entourage / retinue <b>marching in procession</b> .	* marchere >	* i procession
' The people await you, <b>sire</b> ,' a courtier <b>points out</b>	* ( kongelig tiltaleform )	* påpege
before the King is going to <b>appear for</b> his <b>subjects</b> .	* vise sig for	gøre opmærksom på * undersøgt
A <b>tumult</b> of shouting and screaming comes from the crowd,	* ophidset larm	
so the procession is <b>subject to delay occasioned</b> by <b>tumult</b> .	* genstand / * forsinkelse * forårsaget af > * tumult ~ i fare for >	
<b>10</b> The earls and barons today <b>have no authority over</b>	* ... autoritet over ng.	
the people in the county.	*	
The <b>county town</b> is the <b>main town</b> of the county	* amtshovedby	* hovedby
where its government is.	*	
The <b>county `council</b> is a group of people elected to be	* amtsråd	
members of the local government of the county.	*	
The <b>town `council</b> (eE) is an elected group of people,	* byråd	
<b>town `councillors</b> , who are responsible for public areas	* byrådsmedlem	
and services in a particular town.	*	
The <b>town `hall</b> contains the government offices	* rådhus	
<b>20</b> and, in Britain, usually a hall for public meeting, etc.	*	
<b>Town `planning</b> (E) is a <b>high / top priority</b>	* byplanlægning	* være en højt / top- prioriteret sag
with the <b>town `planners</b> at the town hall.	* by-	* planlægger
The <b>city council</b> is the group of elected officials	* by-	* råd
sometimes called he <b>city `fathers</b> who are responsible for	* ~ byens fædre	
governing the city.	*	
The <b>city `hall</b> is the building which <b>houses</b> the government	* rådhus	* huse ng.
of the city.	*	
In America the <b>city hall</b> is the local government	* lokaladministrationen	
and the offices it uses.	*	
<b>30</b> There has been a <b>`citywide</b> campaign <b>to go to vote</b>	* omfattende hele byen	* ~ gå hen at - * stemme >
( E inf <b>to go and vote</b> ) in the <b>municipal election</b> .	* ( gå hen og ... )	* ~ ved > * by- * valg ( angående )
<b>Shoddy construction tips</b> the <b>balance / the csales //</b>	* sjuksket * konstruktion * ~ vende stemningen ~ byggesjusk	
<b>swings</b> the <b>balance</b> in <b>favour</b> of <b>citizens</b> who want	* - - - >	* til fordel for > * borger
some <b>graceless</b> architecture of the 60s to be <b>demolished</b> .	* charmeforladt	* revet. ned
Many <b>city dwellers</b> are <b>bothered with</b> bad means	* byboere	* besværet af ngt.
of transport especially traffic difficulties in the <b>inner city</b> .	* indre by	
<b>Troubled with</b> bad means of <b>conveyance</b> , the <b>city</b> looks	* besværet med > * transport	* byen (-s borgere )
forward to better planning and <b>public transport</b> E / A	* offentlig transport	
<b>public transportation / transit</b> .	* =	

<b>410</b> The <b>Home `Counties</b> are situated around London.	* =
<b>The City</b> is the area of the oldest part of London	* =
which today is Britain's financial and business centre.	*
Business people keep an eye on <b>the City's</b> reaction	* =
expressed by <b>City bankers</b> , <b>City stockbrokers</b> etc.	* city ... * bankier * børsrådgiver vekslerer
An <b>engagement book / diary</b> (E/A) a <b>date book</b> should	* ~ mødekalender
keep people's <b>social</b> and <b>business engagements</b> organized.	* social / forretnings- * aftale, forpligtelse
Another agreements is usually refused because of	*
a <b>prior engagements</b> .	* forudgående * <<
<b>10</b> In England <b>the gentry</b> (o-f), are the class under the nobility	* lavadel
The <b>landed gentry</b> own large tracts of land.	* landadel
Otherwise <b>the gentry</b> are people belonging to the higher	* det bedre borgerskab
<b>social classes</b> .	* social- / samfundsklasse
Members of the gentry settle in certain areas of the city.	*
Some <b>slummy</b> neighbourhoods <b>undergo gentrification</b> ,	* slumagtig * undergå > * social opgradering
as old <b>poor districts</b> and even <b>slums</b> are <b>gentrified</b> .	* fattigkvarter * slumkvarter * opgraderet
In order not to <b>slum it / be slumming</b> in the country,	* ~ leve under forhold under ens normale standard
some members of the upper class have a <b>seat</b> (E),	* landsted
a <b>country `house</b> or <b>country `seat</b> , sometimes	* =
<b>20</b> in the <b>middle of nowhere</b> / in the <b>back of beyond</b> .	* ~ langt ude på landet / uden for lands lov og ret
People go to <b>country clubs</b> where they play sports	* =
as an <b>employment</b> for idle hours, or go to <b>social events</b> .	* beskæftigelse * sociale > * ~ sammenkomster
Some people <b>go in for cross-country riding</b> ;	* dyrke > * terræn- * ridning
they ride <b>across country</b> or <b>cross-country</b> .	* =
Some people go to <b>country `dancing</b> (E).	* folkedans
Some people prefer a more <b>sedentary lifestyle</b>	* stedbunden * livsstil
characterized by a <b>sedentary job / occupation</b> ,	stille (-siddende ) * job / beskæftigelse
<b>sedentary work</b> and <b>sedentary activities</b> .	* = * arbejde * = * aktiviteter
Some people <b>soak up</b> knowledge and language.	* suge ngt. til sig, ~ nemt tilegne sig ( viden etc. )
<b>30</b> Happy to <b>get to</b> or <b>find</b> the <b>answers</b> or <b>solutions to</b>	* komme frem til > * finde > * svar / løsning på >
a mathematical <b>problem</b> , to a <b>crossword ( puzzle )</b> ,	* & opgave * quiz * krydsogtværs ( -opgave )
or to a <b>quiz</b> they enjoy <b>solving</b> a mathematical <b>problem</b> ,	* løse > * =
<b>answering</b> a <b>quiz</b> , or <b>doing / solving</b> a <b>crossword ( puzzle )</b> .	* == =
A <b>solution</b> may be found in a <b>key</b> or be printed elsewhere.	* løsning * facitliste
Some people <b>idle soaking up</b> the sun (<shine ) / warmth.	* ~ lave ingenting * ~ nyde ( solen etc. )
Some people become increasingly <b>sedentary in later life</b> .	* stedbunden * ~ senere i livet
Some animals are ( largely ) <b>sedentary</b>	* stedbunden
while others are <b>migratory</b> .	* trækkende
<small>`maigrêtri</small>	

## A TAX PROTESTER

<p><b>411 Over the years</b> the governments have <b>effected</b> changes in the <b>taxation structure</b>.</p> <p>People <b>pay tax according to</b> income, and businesses pay tax according to profits.</p> <p>People who have a <b>taxable</b> income or taxable <b>earnings</b> (pl.) businesses and companies which have a <b>taxable</b> profit are <b>taxpayers</b>.</p> <p>The <b>tax minister</b> is in charge of the <b>ministry for taxation</b> which takes care of <b>fiscal</b> matters.</p> <p><b>10</b> The tax year begins on <b>April</b> the 6<sup>th</sup> in Britain and on January 1<sup>st</sup> in the US.</p> <p><b>Poll tax</b> has the same rate of taxation while a <b>progressive</b> or <b>graduated system of taxation</b> has a number of <b>tax brackets</b> and perhaps a <b>tax threshold</b>.</p> <p><b>PAYE ( pay as you earn )</b> E/A <b>withholding tax</b> is a system for paying tax in which tax is taken from <b>wage earners'</b> wages and <b>salary earners'</b> salaries and paid directly to the government.</p> <p>The company pays <b>corporation tax</b>.</p> <p><b>20 VAT ( value added tax )</b> E/A <b>sales tax</b> is tax paid in addition to the cost of goods and services you are buying.</p> <p>In Britain the local council <b>charges` council tax</b> (U) based on the value of a persons home.</p> <p>If you own a car in Britain you must pay <b>road tax</b> (U).</p> <p>A <b>tax disc</b> says untill when the car is <b>taxed</b>.</p> <p>Taxpayers have to fill in a <b>tax return</b>, a form in which they give information so that the tax can be calculated by the <b>taxation authorities</b>: the <b>Inland Revenue</b> (E) or <b>Internal Revenue</b> (A).</p> <p><b>30</b> ( Some information is put in <b>brackets / parentheses</b> . )</p> <p>A <b>bracket</b> as a <b>round bracket</b> (E) or <b>parenthesis</b> (A/E), usually used in the plural, is either of a pair of marks / signs placed around a piece of extra information or part of a <b>problem</b> in mathematics [ ma#ê`matiks ] .</p> <p><b>Brackets</b> (A) and <b>square brackets</b> (E) are put around <b>phonetic transcription</b> as shown above.</p>	<p>* i tidens løb</p> <p>* beskætnings-</p> <p>* betale &gt; * skat</p> <p>*</p> <p>* beskætningsmæssig</p> <p>* =</p> <p>* skatteyder</p> <p>* skatteministeriet</p> <p>* skattemæssig</p> <p>* april</p> <p>*</p> <p>* kopskat</p> <p>* progressiv</p> <p>* skattetrin / -gruppe</p> <p>* ~ kildeskat</p> <p>*</p> <p>* ugeløn (-s) * lønmodtager * månedsløn (-) * =</p> <p>*</p> <p>* selskabsskat</p> <p>* meromsætningsafgift</p> <p>*</p> <p>* opkræve / udskrive &gt;</p> <p>*</p> <p>* vejskat, ~ vægtafgift</p> <p>* skatteskive</p> <p>* selvangivelse</p> <p>*</p> <p>* skattemyndighed</p> <p>* =</p> <p>* sætte ngt. i parentes</p> <p>* parentes (-tegn)</p> <p>*</p> <p>*</p> <p>* ~ regneopgave</p> <p>* kantet (-ede) parentes (-er)</p> <p>* fonetisk, lydlig</p>	<p>* effektueret, gennemført ( forandringer )</p> <p>* struktur</p> <p>~ skattesystem</p> <p>* i overensstemmelse med ngt.</p> <p>* indtægter indkomst</p> <p>* =</p> <p>* skattefrie bundgrænse</p> <p>* omsætningsafgift</p> <p>* kommuneskat</p> <p>* =</p> <p>* skattedepartementet</p> <p>* =</p> <p>* transskription, omskrivning</p>
---	--	---

<b>412</b> Some people <b>leave</b> money and property when they die.	* efterlade sig ngt.
Those <b>entitled to inherit</b> , <b>inherit</b> money and property	* arveberettiget * arve ngt.
<b>from the deceased / departed.</b>	* fra > * ( den ) afdøde / bortgæede
People have to pay <b>inheritance tax</b> or <b>estate tax (A&amp;)</b> on	* arveafgift på ngt.
the money or property that they receive <b>by inheritance.</b>	* ved arv
One of the <b>descendants</b> of the White Baron is very	* efterkommer
<small>di`sendênts</small>	
<b>annoyed with</b> the taxman; he is <b>annoyed at</b> the <b>tax burden</b> ,	* utilfreds med ng. * skattebyrden * =
and <b>annoyed that</b> it has <b>risen</b> .	* ... at * pp. steget
<small>`rizên</small>	
Having <b>amassed / earned a fortune</b> ,	* samle sig * formue
<b>10</b> he is <b>annoyed to</b> find out that the <b>tax load</b> has increased.	* være ærgerlig / irriteret over at - * skattebyrden
He <b>takes advantage</b> of <b>tax shelters</b> : ways of using	* drage fordel af > * skattebegunstiget ordning
or investing money so he can legally avoid paying tax.	*
You can earn up to a certain sum <b>tax-free</b> .	* skattefrit
Some <b>tax-deductible</b> costs can be taken off your total	* skattefradragberettiget ( udgift )
<small>-dei`dûktibêl</small>	*
income before it is taxed that is before the amount of tax	*
that you have to pay is calculated.	
You get <b>tax relief</b> (U, E) when you do not have to pay	* skattelettelse
tax on part of what you earn such as tax relief on private	*
health insurance premiums.	*
<b>20</b> The government give a <b>tax break</b> to particular people	* skattelempelse
or organizations such as a special reduction in taxes	*
for low income families with young children.	*
The government works to <b>put right / rectify / redress</b> some	* rette op på >
<b>imbalance(s)</b> as it, <b>among other things</b> , is a <b>sad</b> fact that	* ( uretfærdig ) * blandt andre ting * trist
<small>-`-</small>	ubalance / skævhed blandt andet ( kendsgerning )
<b>deprived</b> children <b>tend to do less well</b> at school.	* under- * tendere * klare sig * mindre * godt
	privilegeret til at -
<b>Tax free</b> income such as <b>tax-exempt</b> savings is income	* skattefri * skattefritaget
<small>-ig`zempt</small>	
that you do not have to pay tax on.	*
Some charities are <b>exempted from</b> paying tax	* fritage ng. fra ngt.
as well as money donated to charity is <b>exempt (adj.) from</b> tax.	* fritaget fra ngt.
<b>30</b> Tax-payers must <b>warrant that</b> they are entitled to	* garantere for at -
either a <b>tax break</b> or a <b>tax exemption</b> .	* skattelempelse * skattefrihed
A <b>tax avoider</b> may exploit <b>tax exemption on</b> money	* skatteunddrager * ... for ngt.
donated to charity.	*
Even if some people complain about paying tax,	*
it's the government's job to <b>put right / rectify / redress</b>	* rette op på / bringe orden i >
a / the <b>imbalance between</b> public expenditure	* ( u-) balancen mellem ngt.
<small>-`-</small>	*
and tax revenues.	
A government may <b>roll back</b> one or more taxes.	* rulle > ( en skat / flere skatter ) tilbage

<p><b>413</b> The <b>tax protester</b> sends in an article <b>ready to publish</b>  <small>prê testêr</small>  <b>subject to the editor's approval.</b></p>	<p>* skatte- * protestmager * parat / færdig til at -  demonstrant  * forudsat / * redaktør * godkendelse  under forudsætning af &gt;  * indlæg i &gt; * strid om ngt.</p>
<p>The article is a <b>contribution to the joust about tax.</b>  <b>Subjecting</b> the tax system <b>to penetrating</b> criticism,  the author of the article <b>jousts with</b> political opponents.</p>	<p>* udsætte ngt. for * skarpsindig ( kritik )  * kæmpe mod ng.</p>
<p>The <b>headline</b> is <b>foist (up)on</b> him by the <b>editor.</b></p>	<p>* overskrift * påtvinge ng. ngt. * redaktør</p>
<p>The <b>city desk</b> at a British newspaper is the department  that deals with the financial news.</p>	<p>* finansredaktionen  *</p>
<p>The <b>city editor</b> is the <b>journalist</b> who is responsible for  <b>10</b> the financial news.</p>	<p>* finansredaktør * journalist  *</p>
<p>The editor <b>edits</b> the newspaper <b>on his own responsibility.</b></p>	<p>* redigere ( avis ) * på eget ansvar</p>
<p>At an American newspaper, the <b>city desk</b>  and the <b>city editor</b> deal with the local news.</p>	<p>* lokalredaktion  * lokalredaktør</p>
<p>Journalists, authors and other writers are humorously  or <b>disapprovingly</b> called <b>scribblers.</b></p>	<p>* misbilligende, nedsættende * skribler, smører  * subjektivitet</p>
<p>There's an element of <b>subjectivity</b> in any kind of criticism,  <small>sûbdʒek'tiviti</small>  and anyone's opinion is <b>bound to be subjective</b>  <small>sêb'dʒektiv</small>  but this article <b>reflects a highly subjective</b> points of view.</p>	<p>* ~ være nødvendigvis &gt; * subjektiv  * afspejle &gt; * = ( synspunkt )</p>
<p>The tax system is <b>subjectively perceived as / to be unfair.</b>  <small>ûn'feê</small>  <b>20</b> People less <b>subjectively</b> involved are better judges.</p>	<p>* subjektivt * opfattet som ( at være ) &gt; * uretfærdigt  personligt  * personligt</p>
<p><b>Subjectivism</b> is a philosophical theory that all knowledge  and moral values are subjective rather than objective that is  to say based on truth that actually exists in the real world.</p>	<p>* subjektivisme  *  *</p>
<p><b>Annoyed about</b> the difference between profit before tax  and profit after tax, the <b>tax avoider</b> and <b>tax dodger</b> not  only <b>thinks in terms of tax advantages, tax avoidance</b>  and <b>tax dodging</b> but also practices <b>illegal tax dodges.</b></p>	<p>* utilfreds over  * skattefidusmager  * tænke &gt; * i henseende af &gt; * skatte- * ...-  * = * ulovlig * -fordele undvigelse  * skattesnyderi / -svig * skattekrumspring</p>
<p>One day, though, he is charged with <b>tax cheat, tax evasion,</b>  <b>tax fiddling</b> and <b>tax fraud</b> by the <b>tax inspector.</b></p>	<p>* = * skatteinspektør</p>
<p><b>30</b> Having <b>exploited loopholes in the fiscal legislation,</b>  this <b>tax evader</b> has been cheating the <b>taxman</b> for years.</p>	<p>* udnytte &gt; * smuthul i &gt; * skattelovgivning  * skatteunddrager * skattefar</p>
<p>In order to <b>avoid / evade</b> ( paying ) tax in his <b>own country,</b>  the <b>tax fiddler / tax cheat</b> goes to live as a <b>tax exile</b>  in a foreign country, a so called <b>tax haven,</b>  where the <b>burden of taxation</b> is less <b>heavy.</b></p>	<p>* undgå / unddrage sig ( at ) ngt. * eget land  * skattefusker / skattesnyder * skatteflygtning  * skattely  * skattebyrde * tung, voldsom  / -tryk</p>
<p><b>Exploitation of tax loopholes, tax dodging,</b>  and an <b>exodus of taxpayers</b> are a <b>fiendish</b> problem.  <small>`fi~ndi\$</small>  It's a <b>fiendishly</b> complicated problem which costs  honest <b>taxpayers</b> a lot of money.</p>	<p>* udnyttelse * skattesmuthul * skatteunddragelse  * menneskeflugt af &gt; * skatteydere * uhyre vanskeligt  ~ skatteflugt  * uhyre  * skatteyder</p>

<b>414</b> Something must be done to <b>put right / rectify / redress</b>	* rette op på >
an <b>imbalance between</b> tax and income, so the government	* ubalance mellem ngt&ngt.
<b>initiates a programme of sweeping reforms</b>	* igangsætte > * program af > * ~ gennem- * reformer gribende
to <b>redress the balance</b> ( of <b>taxation</b> ).	* rette op på > * balancen * i beskatning ~ skabe retfærdighed
The ministry for taxation work to <b>close</b> the tax loopholes.	* lukke ngt.
<b>Plugging</b> all loopholes is a <b>puzzle of fiendish complexity</b> .	* lukke / * svær opgave * djævelsk * kompleksitet ( til-) stoppe ngt. indiviklethed
The <b>complexities</b> of the tax system of his own country,	* indviklethederne
make the <b>fiendishly</b> clever <b>dodger</b> move to a <b>tax haven</b> .	* uhyre * undviger, snyder * skatte- * ly
All the flights <b>on offer</b> are <b>subject to availability</b> .	* i udbud * under forudsætning af > * tilgængelighed ( ledige pladser )
<b>10</b> Flight prices are <b>subject to</b> changes.	* udsat for ngt.
They have / there's an <b>offer - a special offer - on</b> a flight.	* tilbud > * særligt ... > * på ngt.
A flight may <b>be on</b> ( special ) <b>offer</b> (E).	* være på tilbud
The <b>airline passengers</b> are <b>subject to airport tax</b> .	* flypassager * pålagt * lufthavnsskat
All flights are <b>subject to</b> delay.	* udsat for ( forsinkelse )
<b>Air safety</b> is <b>subject to</b> international <b>safeguards</b> .	* flysikkerhed * underlagt * sikkerhedsforanstaltninger
<b>Harassed</b> -looking stewards and stewardesses <b>hand out</b>	* fortravlet * uddele
<b>chewing gum</b> wrapped in <b>gold</b> and <b>silver foil / E&amp; paper</b> .	* tyggegummi * guld- * sølvpapir
<b>Foil</b> // E& <b>silver paper</b> // <b>aluminium E/A aluminum foil</b> //	* folie * sølvpapir * aluminium- folie al`miniêm ê`lu~minêm ~ sølvfolie
<b>tin foil</b> ) is metal made into very thin <b>sheets</b> , and sold in <b>rolls</b> .	* stanniol * lag af ngt. * rulle
<b>20</b> The passengers are <b>jolted</b> ( <b>forwards</b> ) as the plane	* ( blive ) rystet ( puffed fremad )
lands <b>with a jolt</b> / touches the ground in a series of <b>jolts</b> .	* med > * et bump * bump, rystelser
The islands <b>emerged from</b> the sea thousands of years ago.	* dukke op af ngt.
The islands' <b>emergence from</b> the sea was caused by	* opdukken af ngt.
volcanic activity.	*
As soon as the tourists enter foreign territory they are	*
<b>subject to</b> local law, rules, and legal agreements.	* underlagt ngt.
At the <b>customs</b> , travellers are <b>subjected to questioning</b>	* tolden * udsat for > * udspørgen
before <b>clearing customs</b> ( being <b>allowed through customs</b> ).	* ~ komme igennem ... * få lov til at ...
Breaking the customs regulations, a <b>violator</b> must	* lovovertræder
<b>30 submit to</b> being <b>harassed by routine</b> .	* ~ finde sig i at - * ( blive ) chikaneret / * ~ rutine- forulempet mæssigt
<b>Beyond</b> being <b>routinely subjected to`harassment</b> ,	* ud over at - * rutinemæssigt * udsat for > * chikane A&: hê`ras - forulempelse
he may be <b>subject to</b> a <b>penalty</b> ; penalty min. \$100.	* genstand for / * straf hjemfalden til >
The penalty for a first offence is usually a <b>fine</b> .	* bøde
There has been a <b>rash of smuggling</b> over a period.	* udbrud af ngt. * smugleri
The customs officials try to <b>foil</b> any attempt to <b>smuggle</b>	* ( for-) hindre ( forsøg ) * smugle ngt.
things or people ( <b>into</b> the country ).	* + adv.
Many <b>smugglers</b> are <b>foiled in</b> their attempt to <b>smuggle</b>	* smugler * være forhindret i ( forsøg )
<b>owing to the emergence</b> of new technologies.	* på grund af ngt. * fremkomst

<b>415</b> Taking a taxi, the newcomer drives <b>downtown</b> (A).	* ind i byen
The driver <b>rests</b> his right <b>hand on the handbrake</b> (eE) * !!	* hvile > * hånd på > * håndbremse * se side 500
also called <b>emergency brake</b> (A) or <b>parking brake</b> (A).	* nødbremse * parkeringsbremse
( an <b>emergency brake</b> or <b>emergency cord</b> (A) in a train	* nødbremse * =
is called a <b>communication cord</b> in GB )	* =
Music <b>blares out from</b> the car radio.	* larme / brage drøne / gjalde ...
The radio <b>blares (out)</b> local <b>rhythms</b> in between news.	* fra ... = * rytme
The local team <b>triumphed over</b> its rival.	* sejre over
It <b>triumphed</b> 3 – 0 in the final.	* sejre
<b>10</b> The club is good at spotting <b>emergent</b> talents.	* opdukkende spirende
They go through <b>uptown</b> (adj.) neighbourhoods,	* i udkanten af byen
drive through <b>midtown</b> (U), with its <b>midtown</b> districts,	* kvarterer halvvejs inde i / ude af byen * =
and end up <b>downtown</b> (adv.) in the <b>center</b> (A) <b>of the town</b> .	* bymidten, centrum
In a country where you <b>drive on the right</b> , you are only	* køre i højre side, ~ højrekørsel
allowed to <b>overtake</b> eE/eA <b>pass</b> ( another vehicle ) <b>on the left</b> .	* overhale ( ngt. ) * venstre om, ~ udenom
They are <b>overtaken</b> both <b>on the left</b> and <b>on the inside</b>	* overhalet * = * indenom
by police cars <b>with blue lights</b> and <b>the sirens on</b> ;	* med > * blå * lys, ~blink * sirene * på ~ fuld udrykning
<b>with lights flashing</b> and <b>sirens blaring</b> .	* lygte, lys * blinke * = * larme
There has been a <b>rash of</b> car thefts and burglaries	* udbrud / bølge af ngt.
<b>20</b> <b>downtown</b> , in the center of the city A/E the city `centre.	*
Most taxi drivers <b>welcome</b> their customers	* byde ng. velkommen
with an <b>ingenuous</b> and <b>appreciative</b> smile.	* troskyldig, naiv * anerkendende * smil oprigtig, åbenhjertig taknemmeligt
Smiling <b>ingenuously</b> , some local taxi drivers <b>charge</b>	* -t * opkræve >
<b>extortionate rates of pay</b> , though.	* ublu * takst ⇔ * betalings-
The country has been <b>subject to inflation, symptomatic of</b>	* udsat for > * inflation * symptomatisk for >
but just one <b>symptom of</b> the <b>poor state</b> of the <b>economy</b> .	* symptom på > * elendig * ~økonomisk * tilstand
The government has worked hard to <b>conquer</b> the inflation.	* bekæmpe > * =
The <b>conquest</b> of inflation seems successful.	* bekæmpelse af > * =
The taxi suddenly <b>jerks to a stop</b> ; it <b>stops with a jerk</b> .	* ~ standse med et ryk * =
<b>30</b> Having booked a room in a hotel <b>downtown</b> , the new>	* i bymidten / den indre by / centrum
comer is going to stay in the <b>downtown</b> hotel for some time.	* =
A famous singer <b>performs</b> in the evenings.	* optræde
She will be <b>setting out to conquer</b> the world.	* begive sig ud * erobre
She <b>emerged from</b> a scandal <b>with</b> her reputation intact.	* komme ud af ngt.
' <b>In case of emergency</b> , press the alarm button,'	* i nødstilfælde
a sign says next to an <b>emergency exit</b> .	* nøddudgang
The door must be wide and easy to open <b>in an emergency</b>	* i nødstilfælde
as people may come <b>charging / rushing towards</b> the exits,	* skynde sig / styrte afsted mod ngt.
and <b>charge / rush through</b> the exits.	* ... gennem ngt.

<b>416</b> The tax exile might buy a house <b>in uptown</b> ,	* i ydre byområde
or rent an apartment either <b>in midtown</b> or <b>in downtown</b> .	* i mellemste ... * ~ i indre by / bymidten / centrum
Living and working <b>downtown</b> , <b>midtown</b> or <b>uptown</b> ,	* ~ i bymidten * midtvejs i byen * i det ydre af byen
he can take a <b>downtown</b> or an <b>uptown</b> bus	* ind-mod-byen- * mod-udkanten-af-byen-
to <b>go downtown</b> , <b>midtown</b> , and <b>uptown</b> .	* tage > * til bymidten * til midtvejs * til udkanten i byen af byen
He can shop at <b>downtown</b> , <b>midtown</b> and <b>uptown</b> stores.	* midt-i-byen- * midtvejs-i-byen- * i udkanten-af-byen-
<b>City`planning</b> (A) is a high priority at <b>City`Hall</b> (A).	* byplanlægning * bystyret
<b>The city</b> (A) is working to improve public transportation.	* bystyret
The next day, he walks <b>uptown</b> a couple of <b>blocks</b>	* mod udkanten af byen * blok
<b>10</b> until he finds a cab to take him <b>uptown</b> .	* - = -
He always has some extra cash with him for <b>emergencies</b> .	* nødstilfælde
They visit a <b>vantage</b> ( <b>point</b> ), a <b>point from</b> which there is	* udkigs- / -sigtspunkt * punkt / sted hvorfra
<b>a view</b> : in fact the <b>most beautiful</b> view <b>imaginable</b> .	* en udsigt * ~ skønneste * ~ man kan forestille sig smukkeste
The platform is surrounded by a <b>parapet</b> and <b>railed in / off</b>	* lav mur * hegnet ind, indhegnet
so the visitors are <b>protected by</b> a low wall and a <b>guard rail</b> .	* beskyttet af ( mur ) * sikkerhedsrækværk / -gelænder
Some places, the <b>railing</b> of the <b>vantage</b> ( <b>point</b> ) has	* rækværk, gelænder * udkigs- / -sigtspunkt
iron plates <b>riveted</b> together in a <b>decorative pattern</b> of <b>rivets</b> .	* nagle / * dekorativt * mønster * nitte nittet sammen
' Don't lean over the <b>rail</b> ,' a sign says.	* rækværk, gelænder
Anything may be an <b>object</b> of <b>attention</b> ,	* genstand for > * opmærksomhed
<b>20</b> so the tourists <b>focus</b> their cameras <b>on</b> various <b>subjects</b> .	* fokusere / * motiv stille skarpt på ng.
Beautiful flowers <b>emerge all</b> ( <b>the</b> ) <b>year round</b> .	* komme frem * hele året rundt
Some people are <b>allergic</b> ; they <b>have an allergy</b> .	* allergisk * have allergi
They have an allergic reaction if they <b>come in touch with</b>	* komme i > * berøring med ng.
or eat a particular <b>substance</b> .	* substans
Some tourists realize they are <b>allergic to</b> a certain kind of	* allergisk / overfølsom overfor ng.
<b>exotic</b> foodstuff.	* exotisk fremmedartet
<b>Having an allergy to</b> some kind of food, they <b>come out in</b>	* have allergi overfor ng. * få >
an <b>allergic rash</b> if they have this kind of food.	* allergisk udslæt
The sun <b>brings</b> some tourists <b>out in</b> an <b>itchy rash</b>	* & forvolde ng. ng. * kløende * udslæt
<b>30</b> and others <b>come out</b> in a <b>heat rash</b> .	* & pådrage sig / få ng. * hedeudslæt varmeknopper
Some <b>mountaineers</b> try to <b>climb</b> the highest <b>mountain</b> .	* bjergbestiger * klatre op ad > * bjerg
Trying to <b>scale</b> and <b>conquer</b> a <b>steep</b> mountain,	* bestige ng. * erobre > * stejlt ( = ) ( højt og stejlt )
the <b>mountain climbers</b> are <b>linked together</b> by ropes.	* bjergbestiger * fastgjort til hinanden
Some people who are <b>allergic to</b> physical activity	* allergisk overfor ng.
and don't <b>abstain from</b> or cut down on <b>fats</b>	* fedtstoffer
and <b>carbs</b> ( <b>carbohydrates</b> ) easily become <b>obese</b> .	* kulhydrater * fed, overvægtig
<b>From the vantage</b> ( <b>point</b> ) of the beginning of the 21 <sup>st</sup>	* set fra ng. ( fra udsigtspunktet )
century, <b>obesity</b> is reaching <b>epidemic levels / proportions</b> .	* fedme * epidemiske * højder / niveauer overvægtighed

**417** Having **evaded** ( paying ) tax, the **tax exile** applies for **citizenship** after some years of **residence / residency**.

British **by birth, having / holding** British **citizenship**, he is a British **subject** and a British **citizen** but will then be a **citizen** of his **adopted country**.

If you you have / hold **dual citizenship** you are a citizen of two different countries and have / hold **dual nationality**.

**Much as** some people **dislike** becoming unpopular, they know they become unpopular with many people **10** when they move to another country to save tax.

They **dislike it** when they are **pictured / depicted as parasites on society**.

Regarding tax evasion with **intense** and **violent dislike**, some people **regard** tax evaders **with acute dislike**.

So **having a strong dislike of / for** tax evasion, these people have a strong **dislike of / for** evaders, a dislike **verging on** contempt.

Prepared **to put** their **head above** the **parapet**, some people **rails at / against** the tax exiles **20** as soon as the affair is ( **out** ) in the **open**.

Letting their dislike for them **come out into** the **open**, people **overflowing with** anger, **rail**, ' Bloody tax exiles, '

A company has been **overtaken by** another company and eventually been **taken over by** the other company.

As a foreign company **takes ( ) over** a national company, the employees of the latter **are overcome with** sadness and **filled with** fear that their jobs might be moved abroad.

All the **objections** of the employees are **dismissed**.

As the situation in their opinion scarcely **warrants / justifies 30** ( them / their ) being dismissed, the situation clearly **warrants / justifies** further investigation.

As all their objections are **waved ( ) aside / away** they **are overtaken by** worries about unemployment.

As the negotiations are then **overtaken by events**, the unemployment situation becomes an **acute problem**.

Some sacked workers **seek** legal **compensation / redress** for unfair dismissal while other dismissed workers **wave ( ) aside / away // dismiss** the **idea as abortive / fruitless / ineffective / stillborn / unrealistic**.

\* unddrage sig ( at ) ngt. \* ~ skatteflygtning  
\* statsborgerskab \* opholdstilladelse  
\* af fødsel \* ~ indehaver af > \* statsborgerskab  
\* undersåt / borger i kongerige \* borger  
\* borger \* nye land  
\* dobbelt \* statsborgerskab  
\* = \* nationalitet  
\* lige så meget som - \* ikke kunne lide at -  
\*  
\* fremstille ng. som ngt.  
\* ikke bryde sig om det \* & samfundssnylter  
\* intens \* voldsom \* ubehag modvilje  
\* betragte ng. med > \* stærk \* & antipati  
heftig  
\* have en stærk modvilje mod ngt.  
\* ubehag, modvilje antipati  
\* grænsende til ngt.  
\* stikke hovedet frem stå åbent frem  
\* skælde ud på ng.  
\* være åbent fremme  
\* komme åbent frem  
\* være fyldt til randen af ( vrede ) \* skælde ud  
\* overhalet af ng.  
\* overtaget af ngt.  
\* overtage ngt.  
\* være overvældet af ( tristhed )  
\* være fuld af ( frygt )  
\* indvending \* affærdige ngt.  
\* berettigede ( ng&t. ) at -  
\* berettigede ngt. ( & investigation is warranted / justified )  
\* fejte ngt til side / affærdige ngt.  
\* blive grebet af ( bekymring over ngt. )  
\* overhalet af begivenhederne  
\* akut, alvorlig  
\* søge > \* kompensation / erstatning >  
\* for ngt.  
\* fejte > tilside / afvise > \* ide \* som > \* dødfødt  
\* frugtesløs \* ineffektiv \* dødfødt \* urealistisk

<b>418</b> One year the <b>volcano</b> becomes active with a <b>series</b> of alarming and <b>menacing eruptions</b> .	* vulkan * udbrud * ildevarslen faretruende * falsk alarm * komme i udbrud * i udbrud	* serie række * truende
Although the volcano has been smoking <b>ominously</b> in the distance for some time, most people believe it to be <b>a false alarm</b> as usual.	* vól'keinêu `menêsing `âminêsli	
All of a sudden the volcano <b>erupts</b> .		
The volcano is <b>in eruption</b> , as an explosion of <b>ash</b> suddenly <b>erupts</b> from the <b>crater with a deafening crash</b> .	* bryde ud * krater * ... øredøvende * bryde ud * gøre ng. døv	* aske * brag * være naglet til stedet
<b>Deafened</b> by the loud crash, people <b>are riveted to the spot</b> .	* =	* volumen, rumfang
<b>10</b> People <b>are riveted to the ground</b> as an immense <b>volume</b> of rocks and <b>molten lava is erupted</b> from the volcano at a series of loud <b>bangs</b> and <b>peals</b> .	* smeltet * brag * vulkansk * akut, tilspidset * bryde ud i > * vælde ned over ngt. * (være) lagt øde, ødelagt * overdænge ngt. med ngt. * blive > * døds- * tal, rate * revideret til y * røgforgiftende * få øjnene til at > * (få) halsen / svælget til at brænde * være i akut smertetilstand * blive kvalt til døde * pådrage sig / (lide af) akut røgforgiftning * blive akut / alvorlig syg * indledningsvis * i > * (hud-) = * få udslæt * berette om > * i > * fuldt ud klar over ngt. * skride til krisehandling * << at - * handling * nødforanstaltninger	* udspy ngt. * bulder * aske * regne ned panik * bryde ud * give følelserne frit løb * panik * udbrøde * alvorligt * syg * anslået / skønnet / vurderet til x * = * giftig * smerte / svie * slå ud med ngt. * kvæle ng. * have voldsomme smerter * røggasser * kvæle ng. * stadie (-r) af ngt. * udslæt af pletter * dækket af ... * ~ den seneste udvikling i > (katastrofen) * detaljerigdom, ~detaljer * være sig ngt. fuldt bevidst * ~ kræve > * ~ krisemøde
As <b>volcanic ash rains / showers down, panic erupts</b> . The situation becomes <b>acute</b> , and people <b>erupt</b> . People <b>erupt in(to)</b> (a) <b>panic</b> , and <b>erupt</b> , 'God help us'. As volcanic ash <b>showers (down) on</b> everything, a village <b>is wiped out</b> . Fleeing people are <b>showered with</b> ash, so many people <b>are either wiped out, or taken critically ill</b> eE/eA <b>sick</b> .		
<b>20</b> The <b>death toll</b> is <b>initially estimated at</b> around 200, but is later <b>revised to</b> 248.		
The <b>asphyxiating, choking, and suffocating poisonous</b> ash and gasses <b>make</b> people's <b>eyes smart / sting</b> , their <b>throats burn</b> , and their skin <b>erupt in</b> red spots.		
<b>In acute pain</b> as the <b>fumes</b> are <b>choking</b> them, some people are <b>choked to death in / on</b> the fumes while others <b>suffer (from) acute asphyxiation</b> .		
Many survivors <b>become / fall / get acutely ill / sick</b> .		
<b>Initially</b> , a <b>rash erupts</b> all over their body,		
<b>30</b> In the <b>initial stage(s)</b> of their disease, they suffer from skin <b>rashes</b> and <b>eruptions</b> .		
Having <b>come out in a rash</b> , some die <b>covered in rash</b> .		
The press <b>recount</b> the <b>latest developments in</b> the disaster <b>in</b> the most <b>graphic / vivid detail</b> .		
<b>Acutely aware / conscious of</b> the dangerous situations, the government <b>takes emergency action</b> .		
<b>Acutely aware that / conscious that</b> the situation <b>calls for</b> immediate action, it holds an <b>emergency meeting</b> , and demand <b>emergency measures</b> .		

**419** All kinds of **emergency measures** are **taken** as the government **declares a state of emergency**.

The police **are granted emergency powers** to deal with the emergency.

Offers of help are **rolling in**.

Receiving **emergency aid** of thousands of dollars, the government receives **emergency supplies** and **emergency equipment** for the victims of the disaster.

People in the **services** E/A **service** including people in **10 the public services** such as the **police, fire, ambulance,** and **hospital services ( the emergency services (E) )** are trained to deal with an **emergency**.

People in the **essential services**, which include organisations that provide basic things such as water, electricity and gas, know what to do **in an emergency**.

People in the **emergency room (ER) (A)** of a hospital may work day and night.

In GB a similar room or department in a hospital is called **casualty ( department )** or **accident and emergency ( A&E )**.

**20** People are **evacuated from** the worst **affected** areas.

The **paramedics give first aid to** seriously injured victims.

Paramedics need **strong nerves** to treat **the injured (pl.)** who **suffer great pain**, and may **be drenched in / with** blood.

In the **hospital accident and emergency department (E)** **on the emergency ward**, people receive urgent treatment.

Blood easily **soaks in**.

So sometimes blood has **soaked into** peoples clothes and **soaked through** their clothes

**Soaked with** blood, their clothes **are soaked ( through )**.

**30** If people's clothes **are drenched with / in** blood, the staff has to cut off people's **blood-soaked** clothes.

People who need **intensive care** are taken to **intensive care (U) / the intensive care unit ( ICU ) (C)**.

In GB **the Coastguard** is one of the emergency services

In the US **the Coast Guard** is a branch of the armed forces.

A **coastguard (E)** or **coastguardman (A)** is a member of one of these organizations.

A pilot had to make an **emergency landing** on a field.

The plane **jolted ( along ) over** the **rough ground**.

\* nød- \* ~ foranstaltninger \* ~ blive iværksat

\* erklære > \* ~ undtagelsestilstand

\* blive givet, ~ få > \* nødberedskabs- ~ beføjelser

\*

\* ( tilbud ) ~ strømme ind

\* nødhjælp

\* nødforsyning

\* nødudstyr

\* militæret

\* politi- \* brand- \* ambulance- \* hospitalsvæsen

\* beredskabstjeneste

\* nødstilfælde

\* ~ samfundsvigtig \* tjeneste

\*

\* nødstilfælde, krisesituation

\* skadestue

\*

\*

\* skadestue (\* fork. for < )

\* ( blive ) evakueret fra > \* påvirket, ~ ramt ( område )

\* ( ambulance- ) redder \* yde > \* første- \* hjælp \* til ng.

\* stærke \* nerver \* de tilskadekomne

\* lide > \* voldsomme \* smerter \* smurt ind i ( blod )

\* hospitals- \* ~ skadestue

\* på > \* akut- \* afdeling

\* ( blod ) sive ind

\* sive ind i ngt.

\* ... gennem ngt.

\* ( gennem- ) af ngt.

\* ( tøj ) være gennemvædet af ( blod )

\* blodgennemvædet

\* intensiv \* behandling \* behandling

\* intensiv \* behandling = \* ... \* ... \* enhed ~ intensivafdelingen

\* kystbevogtningstjenesten

\*

\* ansat i kystbevogtningen

\*

\* nødlanding

\* bumpe ( ~ hen ) over > \* ~ ujævn \* underlag

**A NEW KING**

<b>420</b> A new king was <b>crowned in March</b> .	* krone ng.	* i marts
At the <b>coronation</b> of a monarch, a <b>royal crown</b>	* kroning (-sceremoni) af ng.	* ~ konge- * krone
is formally placed on the head of a new king or queen,	*	
while an <b>imperial crown</b> is placed on the head of an emperor.	* kejserkrone	
As an <b>only child</b> , the <b>crown prince</b> had an obvious <b>claim</b>	* enebarn * kronprins	* krav >
<b>to the crown</b> and also an ambition to <b>come to the throne</b> .	* på > * & tronen * komme på tronen kongeværdigheden	
Before his father's death, the crown prince	*	
had long been <b>the ( real ) power behind the throne</b> .	* den egentlig magt	* bag tronen
As ( the ) <b>sole heir to the throne</b> , the new king was	* enearving ( til )	* tronen
<b>10 crowned (as)</b> King of the country.	* krone ... ng. til	kongeværdigheden
At the the ceremony, having formally accepted <b>the crown</b> ,	* & kongeværdigheden	
the new King <b>wore</b> and <b>carried the regalia</b> , the <b>crown `jewels</b> .	* være iklædt > * bære på > * rigsregalier * kronjuveler ri`geiliê	
<b>Wearing the crown</b> and a <b>ceremonial sword</b> ,	* bære ( på ) / iklædt ngt.	* ceremoniel
he <b>carried a sceptre</b> and an <b>orb</b> in his hands.	* bære på ngt. * scepter	* rigsåble
Many of the <b>crowned heads</b> of Europe were present.	* kronede hoveder	
The cathedral where the coronation took place	*	
is the <b>crown `jewel</b> and the <b>crowning glory</b> of the city.	* pragtstykke / -værk	* =
The <b>masonry</b> at the <b>crown</b> of the arch of the entrance	* murværk	* top
of the cathedral was <b>decorated with</b> a crown made of flowers.	* dekoreret med ngt.	
<b>20 Festoons</b> of <b>lilies</b> and <b>decorative greenery</b> ran down	* guirlande * lilje	* pyntegrønt
either <b>curve</b> .	* kurve, bue krumning	
As an <b>exceptional occasion for public ceremonial</b> ,	* enestående, særlig * lejlighed til >	* ceremoniel
the coronation was the <b>main event</b> of the year.	* hoved-	* begivenhed
The King, representing <b>the Crown</b> , regards <b>the crown</b> as	* kongemagten	* kronen & kongeværdigheden
a symbol of the <b>unity of the nation</b> and <b>national unity</b> .	* nationens enhed	* national enhed
Having both political and <b>ceremonial duties</b> ,	* ceremoniel	* pligt
the King is known for his political <b>zeal</b> and <b>unity of purpose</b> .	* ( politisk ) iver	* målbevidsthed
Being a <b>literary man</b> – a <b>man of letters</b> –	* ~ litterær / belæst * mand	* =
he is known as a <b>man of light and leading</b> ,	* mand af > * oplysning * ledelse ~ leder- / førerskikkelse	
<b>30</b> and one of the <b>lights of the age</b> .	* lys, ~ førende skikkelse	* den tids
<b>Leading lights</b> in politics, and their <b>innovative / &lt;tory</b>	* førende skikkelse	* nyskabende
<b>writings</b> have <b>kindled</b> the King's <b>interest</b> in politics.	* skriverier * ( optændt ) ~ vakt >	* interesse
Although the King is a <b>shining light</b>	* strålende	* lys, ~ eksempel dygtig person
he <b>hides his light under a bushel</b> .	* sætte sit lys under en skæppe ( 8 gallons )	
While the King <b>makes light of</b> many of his achievements,	* være ydmyg	
he'd never <b>make light of</b> a <b>relationship with</b> a <b>future</b> queen.	* bagatelisere ( let )	
He never <b>treats</b> the issue as <b>trivial</b> and <b>unimportant</b> .	* kærlighedsforhold * kommende	
	* behandle * trivial, ligegyldig * uvigtig `triviêl - `på-tênt banal, ubetydelig	

A LOVERS' MEETING IN A RUSH

421 The King sometimes **amuses himself by** watching the carriages **unloading** and **loading** ( goods ) as the men **unload** goods and **load** the carriage (**up**) **with empties** (pl).

One day, while the men are **busy unloading** and **loading** (**up**) ( the carriages ), the King **runs straight into the arms of** the **object of his choice**.

**Even as** his **eyes alight / light** (**up**) on a young lady, his **heart beats quick / quickly, quicker** than usual.

As he **alights / lights** (**up**) on her, his **breathing, heart, 10 and pulse quicken**; he **feels** his heart **beat(ing) fast**.

Having (**a**)**lighted from a** ( **horse-drawn** ) **coach**, she is **struggling with a heavy** suitcase, too **heavy** for her to carry.

The King **fastens** his **eyes on** her face.

His gaze **fastens on** her face **in rapture**.

At first, she's too shy to **meet** his **steadfast gaze**.

Having **made a quick decision** and **touched** her gently **on the arm**, the King **lifts** the suitcase which is **heaviest**.

Even for the King it's **heavy** and difficult to **heave down**.

The young lady takes the suitcase which is **lightest** to carry.

20 The King feels his **heartbeat quickens** as he gives her a **gentle / light tap on** the **shoulder**.

While she **finds it decent of** the King **to assist** her, she **awakens a flood** of tenderness **in him towards** her.

**Giving her a helping hand**, and **pushing a heavy door open**, the King's heart starts to beat **more quickly**.

His heart beats **much quicker**; it beats **faster** and **faster**.

The young lady carries her other suitcase – it's **fairly light** – **light** and easy ( for her ) to carry.

While the King tries to **fasten** his **attention to** his task,

30 all his **attention fastens on** the young lady.

The **fair** young lady has **light** blue eyes, **fair** hair, and **fair** skin; her head is **crowned with a mop of curls**.

It was late afternoon and the **light** is beginning to **fade**.

Looking at the **dark devastatingly handsome** young man, the young lady just **regard / see** the King **as** a tall and strong, **darkly** handsome stranger **with a heavy build**.

He is **heavy-**set but not fat with **dark** skin, long **dark** hair, and **dark** brown eyes, and his **voice** is **light** and pleasant.

\* over i huj og hast

\* underholde sig ved at -

\* losses, blive losset \* lastes // blive lastet / læsset ( aflæsse ngt.) ( på-) læsses ( ngt.)

\* losse ngt. \* laste ngt. med > \* tom emballage læsse ngt. af ( kasser, flasker og glas )

\* travlt beskæftiget med at \* losse \* laste læsse af læsse på

\* løbe lige i armene på ng.

\* emne for ngs. valg ng. ngs. udkårne

\* i samme øjeblik som \* ng's blik falder på ngt.

\* hjerte \* slå \* hurtigt \* hurtigere

\* få tilfældigt øje på ngt. \* åndedræt \* hjerte (-slag )

\* puls \* blive \* føle ( hjerte ) ⇔ at - \* slå \* hurtigere hurtigere

\* stige af ngt. \* hestetrukken \* karet

\* kæmpe med ngt. \* tung \* =

\* fæstne sit blik på ngt.

\* ... sig på ngt. \* i begejstring henrykt

\* møde > \* vedholdende > \* ~ faste blik

\* tage en hurtig beslutning \* røre ng. >

\* på armen \* løfte \* tungest hanke op i

\* tung \* hive / løfte ned

\* lettest

\* hjerteslag \* blive hurtigere

\* forsigtigt / let \* prik \* på skulderen

\* finde det > \* elskværdigt af ng. at -

\* vække > \* ~ bølge af ( ømhed )

\* give ng. en hjælpende hånd \* skubbe > \* tung \* dør

\* ~ op \* ( slå ) hurtigere

\* meget hurtigerer

\* temmelig \* let

\* =

\* fastholde sin opmærksomhed på ngt.

\* opmærksomhed \* fæstne sig ved

\* yndig \* lyse- ( blå ) \* lyst ( hår )

\* lys ( hud ) \* ~ have > på toppen \* ~ manke \* krøller

\* lys \* blive svagere

\* mørk ( -håret / -øjet / -lødet ) \* kraftfuld \* smuk

\* betragte / se ng. som ngt.

\* mørklødet ( smuk ) \* ~ af kraftigt bygning

\* kraftig \* mørk ( hud ) \* = ( hår )

\* = \* stemme \* dæmpet



<b>423</b> Having seen a <b>shooting`star speeding across the sky</b> ,	* ~ stjernes kud	* fare >	* hen over	* himlen
the King <b>makes a wish</b> before he turns around	* ~ foretage			* et ønske
and <b>takes</b> the young lady <b>in his arms</b> .	* tage ng. >			* i sine arme
<b>By the light of the silvery orb</b> of the moon,	* i skæret fra >	* sølvskinnende		* kugle
he admires her beautiful face and her <b>light hair piled high</b>	* lys			* sætte op
<b>on the crown of</b> her head.	* på toppen af ( hovedet )			
<b>Holding her in his arms</b> , the King <b>ventures to</b> give her	* holde ng. i sine arme		* driste sig til at -	
a <b>light and gentle kiss on the cheek</b> .	* let ( kys ) * forsigtig ... * på kinden		* i al uskyldighed	
He <b>dares to kiss</b> her <b>lightly on the cheek in all innocence</b> .	* driste sig til at - * kysse ng. * let på ...		* i al uskyldighed	
<b>10</b> Having <b>exchanged amorous glances</b> , they <b>kiss</b> each	* udveksle > * forelskede * blikke		* kysse ng. >	
other <b>on the mouth</b> , first <b>gently</b> then <b>passionately</b> .	* på > * munden	* blidt		* lidenskabeligt
As they <b>turn</b> ( their <b>face</b> ) <b>towards home</b> ,	* vende ( næsen / snuden ) hjemad			
he <b>puts</b> his <b>arm around</b> her instead of <b>holding</b> her <b>hand</b> .	* lægge armen omkring ng.		* ~ holde ng. i hånden	
<b>With great relish</b> she <b>feels</b> his <b>arm go / going round</b> her.	* med stort velbehag		* mærke ngs. arm >	* komme omkring sig
When she suddenly feels something irritating in her shoe,	*			
the young lady <b>fastens</b> her <b>hand on</b> the king's arm.	* holde hånden fast i ngt.			
She <b>wears</b> a pair of <b>`lace-ups</b> (eE); a pair of <b>lace-up shoes</b> .	* gå med / have > på			* snøresko
She's got shoes with <b>lace fasteners / fastenings</b> .	* snørebinding / -lukke			
Her shoes <b>fasten with</b> ( <b>shoe&gt;</b> ) <b>laces</b> .	* bindes			* snørebånd
<b>20</b> Her hand <b>fastens on</b> his arm as she <b>unlaces</b> her shoe.	* holde fast i			* binde / snøre op
Having <b>unfastened</b> her shoe she turns it upside down	* løsne > // binde / snøre ( sko ) op			
and shakes it to remove a <b>pebble</b> .	* småsten			
She puts on her shoe and bends down to <b>fasten</b> it.	* binde / snøre ngt.			
She <b>ties</b> her ( <b>shoe&gt;</b> ) <b>laces /A&amp; shoestrings</b> firmly.	* snørebånd			
If your laces become <b>undone</b> you might <b>trip over</b> .	* gå op			* snuble
Having <b>laced</b> (up) her shoe, she <b>takes</b> the King <b>by the hand</b> .	* snøre ngt.	* tage ng. >		* ~ i hånden
<b>Taking up</b> their <b>walk</b> , they once again <b>stroll</b> hand in hand.	* genoptage	* spadseretur		* spadserer
<b>Going on with</b> their <b>homeward stroll</b> ,	* fortsætte med ngt.		* hjem-	* =
they walk <b>with</b> their <b>fingers laced</b> .	* med fingrene flettet		~ spadseretur hjemad	
<b>30</b> They <b>lace</b> their conversation is <b>with witty asides</b> .	* sammenknytte ngt. > * med > * åndfuld		* side-	
Home again after a wonderful <b>summer's day / evening</b> ,	* ~ indflette ngt. vittig		bemærkning	
the King <b>fastens</b> his arms (a)round her <b>waist</b> .	* sommer-		* dag / aften	
Having <b>folded</b> her <b>in his arms</b> and <b>kissed</b> her <b>goodnight</b> ,	* holde ( arm ) omkring >			* talje
the King suddenly <b>comes to think of tomorrow</b> .	* holde armene omkring ng.	* kysse ng. >		* godnat
' Will you <b>join</b> me <b>for lunch</b> ? ' he asks in a <b>rapturous</b> tone	* komme i tanke om dagen i morgen			
when it suddenly <b>occured</b> to him <b>to ask</b> her.	* gøre ngt. med ng.		* begejstret /	
<b>Throwing / fastening</b> her arms (a)round his <b>neck</b> ,	* ~ spise frokost med mig		henrykt ( tonefald )	
she <b>accepts</b> his <b>invitation with rapture</b> , while the King	* falde ng. ind at -			
<b>hardly dares to</b> believe he has <b>captured</b> her <b>heart</b> .	* kaste / ~ lægge >	* ~ armene om halsen på ng.		
	* ~ sige ja til >	* invitation		* med begejstring /
	* næppe * at turde at -			henrykkelse
	~ knap nok tør ( tro at - )	* erobre >		* hjerte



**425** As a child, the King still used to **waken (up)** early, and **waken** his nanny (**up**) when it was just **getting light**.

One morning he had **wakened (up)** as usual as soon as **it was light**, and **wakened** his nanny (**up**).

He **wakened up to** realize that a **memory** had **wakened**; a dream had **awakened** a forgotten **memory**.

Sometimes when he **awoke** early, he started to play silently by himself before he **awoke** his **sleeping** nanny.

The nanny who **awoke from** deep sleep,

**10 awoke to** the sound of a **joyful** and **playful** boy.

Feeling **light-hearted** and **gay** (o-f), she **awoke to** find him **wrapped up / absorbed / engrossed in** playing.

Some dreams **are bound to awake emotions**; bound to **awake** happiness, sadness, love, **hatred(s)**, friendliness, hostility, fear, **hate** etc.

**Judging by / to judge from** his dreams, old emotions and **acute / strong** feelings **awoke**.

It's important to **awake to** the danger of **sentimentality**.

A member of the ruling class must **be awake to** the danger **20** of being too **sentimental** and **indulge** in **sentimentalism**.

As a young man, the King usually had to **awaken** early as his **valet** had a **standing** order to **awaken** him early.

So the young man **had** usually **awakened** quite early when his valet **had awakened** him in the morning.

The valet, **bald** on the **crown** of his head, had spent all his **waking hours caring for** the prince.

Sometimes the valet was finding it hard to **stay awake**.

As soon as the prince was around, though, he **was (all) sweetness and`light**.

'Come on, **lighten up!**' the valet used to say **30** when the prince's **mood** needed to **lighten (up)**.

The valet sometimes **figures** ( that ) if he tells a **delicious joke**, it will **lighten** the prince's **mood (up)**, and **lighten** the **conversation (up)**.

Even if it was sometimes a **poor, feeble** or **weak joke**, the prince's mood and conversation used to **lighten (up)**, **for** (o-f / poet.) the valet was **held in deep affection** **by** the prince.

- \* vågne
- \* vække ng. \* blive lyst
- \* vågne
- \* være lyst \* vække ng.
- \* vågne op til at - \* minde > \* være vakt til live
- \* ( havde ) vækket > \* minde  
~ vakt ( et minde ) til live
- \* vågne ( norm. kun datid )
- \* vække ng. \* sovende
- \* vågne af ngt.
- \* vågne til ngt. \* munter \* =
- \* munter \* = \* vågne op og -
- \* optaget / opslugt af at -
- \* ~ vil uvilkårligt gøre ngt. \* vække følelser
- \* = \* had ( mod ng&t. bestemt )
- \* \* = ( i al almindelighed )
- \* at dømme ud fra ngt.
- \* stærk \* vågne
- \* få øjnene op for / \* sentimentalitet  
blive klar over ngt.
- \* vågen /  
på vagt overfor ngt.
- \* sentimental \* hengive sig til ngt. \* sentimentalisme
- \* vågne
- \* kammertjener \* stående / \* vække ng.  
~ vedvarende ( ordre )
- \* vågne
- \* vække ng.
- \* skaldet \* top
- \* vågne tid \* tage sig af / bekyrre sig om ng.
- \* holde sig vågen
- \*
- \* rar og venlig ( til en forandring )
- \* op med humøret
- \* humør > \* ~ komme i vejret
- \* forestille sig / regne med at -
- \* fornøjelig > \* vittighed \* lette > \* humør
- \* lette > \* samtale
- \* dårlig / tyndbenet \* vittighed
- \* ( humør / samtale ) lettes
- \* fordi - \* ~ være afholdt / elsket >
- \* af ng.

<b>426</b> The prince had been <b>awakened</b> to take his turn in the <b>day-to-day</b> work.	* blive vække for at -	
So he <b>awakened</b> to take his turn in <b>the day's work</b> .	* daglig	
<b>Awakening from</b> a good night's sleep, the young prince used to <b>awaken light-`heartedly</b> to a secure everyday life.	* vågne ...	* dagens ... / dont
' Things will be fine,' he used to say <b>lightly</b> .	* vågne efter	
Soon, however, he <b>found out / learnt</b> to his <b>cost</b> that it's <b>indeed</b> not <b>(all) sweetness</b> and <b>light</b> being a prince.	* ... til	* muntert sorgløst
A disaster was <b>waiting to`happen</b> .	* henkastet	
<b>10</b> ....	* finde ud af / lære af bitter erfaring at - ~ måtte sande at -	
One morning, as someone was <b>knocking at / on</b> his <b>door</b> ,	* så sandelig	* den rene svir
a <b>loud knock at / on</b> the door <b>brought</b> him <b>fully awake</b> .	* ~ ligge og lure	
The sound of <b>loud knocking</b> and <b>heavy footsteps</b> <b>brought</b> him <b>wide awake</b> .	*	
A <b>nasty</b> surprise <b>awaited</b> him.	* banke på >	* døren
A terrible surprise was <b>waited</b> him outside the door.	* højt / kraftigt bank på ...	* gøre ng. lysvågen
He <b>was in for</b> a dramatic and painful surprise.	* høj (lydt)      * banken      * tung      * fodtrin	
<b>It was bedlam</b> when he <b>awakened to</b> some bad news.	* <<	
<b>Having a rude awakening</b> , he <b>awakened to</b> find out,	* slem, væmmelig ( overraskelse )	* vente på ng.
<b>20</b> and <b>be informed that</b> his elder brother, the <b>crown prince</b> ,	* =	
had been <b>assassinated</b> .	* have ngt. i vente	
The news <b>hit</b> him <b>like a thunderbolt</b> .	* som et galehus      * vågne op til ngt. kaos	
It <b>jolted</b> him ( <b>out of his mind with dismay</b> ).	* få en brat opvågning	* ~ vågne og -
He had a very <b>close relationship with</b> his brother.	* blive informeret ( om ) at -	* kronprins
His brother had always <b>gone out on</b> a <b>limb</b> to help him.	* snigmyrde	
The turmoil <b>kept</b> everyone <b>awake</b> .	* ramme ng.      * som en tordenkile ~ komme som et chok	
Despair <b>was in the air</b> ; it <b>hung heavy in the air</b> .	* ryste ng.      ( * ude af sig selv > * af forfærdelse ) (- bringe ng. > )	
The prince had <b>clung to the hope</b> that the whole affair was a <b>bad joke</b> .	* tæt forhold til ng.	
<b>30</b> It was <b>with</b> a <b>heavy`heart</b> that <b>relatives</b> and friends had met <b>at the wake</b> before and after the burial to <b>remember / commemorate the departed / the deceased</b> .	* ~ løbe en risiko for at - ( gå ud på en gren )	
<b>Relations</b> and friends, all of them <b>with a broken heart</b> , had been walking <b>heavily</b> , ( keeping ) their <b>heads down</b> , and once in a while letting out a <b>moan</b> or <b>groan of</b> sadness.	* holde ng. vågen	
No one had <b>in</b> their <b>wildest dreams</b> imagined the fate <b>in store</b> ( <b>for</b> him ); it had <b>broken</b> their <b>hearts</b> .	* ~ der er en atmosfære /      * ~ der herskede en tung stemning af ( desperation ) = / = af ( = )	
No one <b>could possibly imagine</b> what had <b>happen to</b> him; what ill fate, accident, or disaster had <b>waited</b> him.	* klynge sig til håbet ( om ) at -	
	* en dårlig vittighed	
	* med tungt hjerte	* familiemedlem
	* vågeperiode / -nat gravøl	* mindes ng.
	* mindes ng.	* den afdøde
	* familiemedlem      * med >	* knust      * hjerte
	* med tunge ( sørgmodige ) skridt	* med bøjet hoved
	* jammer	* støn af ( sorg )
	* i ens vildeste fantasi	
	* der venter / ventede ( på ng. )	* knuse >      * hjerte
	* & have fantasi til at forestille sig	* sket for / med ng.
	* vente ng.	

<b>427</b> Made to carry a <b>heavy load</b> , the <b>coffin</b> eE/eA <b>casket</b>	* tung	* byrde	* kiste
had eight handles to <b>spread</b> the <b>load along</b> the coffin.	* fordele >	* & vægt	* langs ngt.
Eight men carried the coffin to <b>spread</b> the <b>burden / weight</b> .	* fordele >		* byrde / & tyngde
Many people at the funeral service wore black <b>armbands</b> .	* armbind		
The crown prince's death <b>lay heavy on</b> their <b>heart</b> .	* hvile ng. tungt om hjertet		
The <b>wake awoke</b> a flood of unexpected <b>tenderness</b>	* vågning	* vække	* ømhed
towards both <b>the quick and the dead</b> .	* levende og døde		
Old feelings and emotions <b>awoke</b> as the departed	* vågne		
was <b>laid to sleep</b> in the <b>narrow bed</b> .	* stede ng. til hvile ~ begrave ng.		* graven
<b>10</b> The funeral eventually <b>awakened</b> the young prince to	* få ng. til at få øjnen op for / / blive klar over / indse at -		
the <b>realization that</b> his brother had died	* erkendelse af at -		
He realized he'd never been <b>serious about the fact that</b>	* seriøs omkring det faktum at - tage det alvorligt at -		
he'd be crown prince <b>in the event of</b> his brother's death,	* i tilfælde af ngt.		
and then king <b>in the event that</b> his father passed away.	* i det tilfælde at -		
Having <b>gone to rest / bed / sleep</b> quite late the next night,	* gå til hvile / i seng		
and <b>put out</b> the <b>candle</b> , the prince couldn't <b>fall asleep</b> .	* slukke >	* tælle- / stearinlys	* falde i søvn
Having <b>put out</b> the <b>light</b> , he just lay there <b>in the dark</b> .	* ... >	* lyset	* i mørket
He couldn't <b>get to sleep</b> – he lay <b>wakeful</b> all night.	* falde i søvn		* vågen søvnløs
<b>Lying sleepless</b> , he didn't sleep a <b>wink</b> .	* ligge >	* søvnløs	* ikke sove et øjeblik
<b>20</b> <b>Lying restless</b> , he didn't get a <b>wink of sleep</b> .	* ... >	* hvileløs	* ikke få et øjeblik søvn
Having <b>spent</b> a <b>sleepless</b> and <b>restless</b> night,	* tilbringe	* søvnløs >	* hvileløs ( nat )
without ( having <b>had</b> ) a <b>wink of sleep</b>	* et øjeblik søvn		
his eyes were red <b>through lack of sleep</b> .	* ( på grund ) af >		* mangel på søvn
His <b>darkest fears were confirmed</b> .	* ngs. dystreste anelser bliver bekræftet & det ng. mest frygter sker		
His <b>worst fears</b> were confirmed; for some <b>unknown reason</b>	* værste ... * af ( en eller anden ) ukendt >		* årsag grund
his brother had <b>sought out</b> that <b>fabled / storied</b> place	* opsøge og finde ngt.		* sagnomspunden
where so many <b>dark deeds</b> had been committed.	* skumle gerninger		
Was the <b>assasination</b> a <b>foretaste of</b> what <b>was to come</b> ?	* snigmord	* forsmag på ngt.	* være i vente
His brother had been known for his <b>dark humour</b>	* sort humor		
<b>30</b> common in difficult situations.	*		
Maybe his <b>black humor</b> had been a <b>cover-up</b>	* <<		* dække over
hiding a <b>load of</b> trouble and a <b>dark vision</b> of the future ?	* bunke ( problemer )	* dyster	* vision om / syn på ( fremtiden )
Had a <b>darker side to</b> his character / nature made him	* mørkere side af ( ~ personlighed )		
<b>soil</b> his <b>hands</b> and <b>reputation with</b> some shady business ?	* tilsmudse >	* hænder	* omdømme * med ( skummelt gøremål )
For some time the prince had a <b>love-hate relationship</b>	* had-kærlighedsforhold >		
<b>with</b> his <b>departed</b> brother – had someone been <b>betrayed</b> ?	* til ng.	* afdød ( bror )	* forrådt
Once in a while the new crown prince <b>felt a great sense of</b>	* have en stærk følelse af >		
<b>betrayal</b> – but who was the <b>real betrayer after all</b> .	* forræderi egentlig	* virkelig	* forræder * i sidste ende egentlig

428 Had his brother, or anything, or any situation been	*
<u>an accident / a disaster waiting to happen</u> ?	* <u>idm</u> : ulykke / katastrofe * ligge og lure ~ en tikkende bombe
His departed brother was <b>under a cloud ( of suspicion )</b> .	* under mistanke, ~ i unåde
His brother, and the <b>name / reputation</b> he left behind him	* ~ eftermæle
kept <b>having a cloud of suspicion hanging over</b> them.	* have > * en mistanke hængende over ngt.
Suspicion <b>clouded</b> the new crown prince's <b>face</b> ,	* formørke ngt.
and doubts were beginning to <b>cloud</b> his mind.	* formørke / -plumre ngt.
Sadness mixed with anger and worries <b>clouded</b> his <b>brow</b> .	* formørkede ngt. * pande
His face <b>clouded ( over ) with</b> anger, sadness and worry.	* formørkes af ngt.
<b>10</b> His <b>judgement</b> was <b>clouded</b> by worries.	* dømmekraft * forplumret
For some time his brother's face <b>haunted</b> him	* hemsøge /
not only in his dreams and the <b>dreamlike</b> state	forfølge / plage ng. * drømmeagtig
between <b>waking</b> and <b>sleeping</b> but also haunted him all	* opvågning * søvn
his <b>waking life</b> , every <b>waking day</b> and <b>waking moment</b> .	* vågne ...
The prince's face <b>darkened</b> every time he thought about	* formørkes af vrede
the <b>contemptible / detestable assassin</b> who had committed	* foragtelig * snigmorder
the <b>despicable assassination</b> of his brother.	* afskyelig * snigmord
Deep melancholy <b>clouded</b> his <b>features</b> .	* formørke > * ansigtstræk
It was <b>agony</b> not knowing the <b>true facts of the case</b> .	* ( en ) lidelse * sand * kendsgerning * sag pine ( ~ sagens rette sammenhæng )
<b>20</b> Not knowing the <b>truth of a matter prolongs</b> the <b>agony</b> .	* sandheden i ngt. * sag * forlænge ngt. * = ( ~ en sags rette ... ) ( ~ trække pinen i langdrag )
The new crown prince had tried to <b>reconstruct</b>	* rekonstruere >
the <b>sequence of events</b> which had <b>led up to</b> the <b>tragic event</b> .	* række af > * begivenheder * ført op til > * tragisk ...
Could he have <b>changed</b> the <b>course of events</b> ?	* forandre begivenhedernes gang
Unable to <b>let sleeping dogs lie</b> , he came upon some <b>facts</b> ,	* ~ ikke rippe op i fortiden * kendsgerninger
<b>plain to see</b> , that <b>showed</b> his brother in a <b>in another light</b> .	* simple at > * forstå * vise ng. > * i et andet lys
A <b>clear / plain fact is that</b> having <b>kept</b> it very <b>secret</b>	* klar > * kendsgerning er at - * holde det ( meget ) hemmeligt / skjult
<b>/E&amp; dark</b> , his brother had had an <b>obscure</b> mission to carry out,	* ~ skjult * ~ tilsløret, ukendt
and had <b>consorted with</b> people <b>harbouring sinister designs</b> .	* omgås med ng. * nære > * skumle * planer pleje omgang med ng.
The <b>clear / plain fact is that</b> as his younger brother,	* ( det klare ) faktum er at -
<b>30</b> the new crown prince had been as much <b>in the dark</b>	* ~ ( være ) i uvidenhed
as everyone else although he'd always thought	*
they <b>had</b> no <b>dark secrets from</b> each other.	* have > * ~ dystre * hemmeligheder overfor ng.
It's been a <b>breach of confidence, plain and simple</b> .	* ~ tillidsbrud * ~ simpelt hen
Everyone had been <b>kept in the dark about</b> his brother's	* holde ng. i uvidenhed om
intentions to <b>accomplish</b> a secret plan.	* fuldføre ngt.
Suddenly <b>seeing</b> matters in a <b>new light</b> ,	* se ( sagen ) * i et nyt lys
the new crown prince came to <b>see</b> his brother <b>different light</b> .	* .. ( ng. ) ...
Many facts will probably never <b>see the light ( of day )</b> .	* se dagens lys komme for en dag

<b>429</b> As probably the most tragic <b>incident in</b> the King's <b>life</b> ,	* hændelse >	* i ngs. liv
the loss of his brother had <b>cast a blight on</b> his youth.	* kaste >	* plantesygdom på ngt. ~ bringe fordærv over ngt.
<b> Casting a cloud over</b> his youth, it had <b>blighted</b> his youth.	* kaste en ( mørk ) skygge over ngt.	* ~ fordærve ngt.
It was a tragedy that <b>darkened</b> his otherwise <b>carefree</b> youth.	* formørke ngt.	* bekymringsfri
He'll never forget the <b>terrible events</b> of that period.	* forfærdelig begivenhed	
The death of his brother, and the prospect of becoming	*	
heir to the throne had <b>burdened</b> the prince ( <b>with</b> worry ).	* bebyrde ng.	* med ngt.
He had <b>burdened</b> himself <b>with</b> too many worries.	* ... sig med ngt.	
Suspicion and doubt had <b>loaded</b> the prince <b>down</b> .	* overbebyrde / tvinge ng. i knæ	
<b>10</b> Worries had <b>loaded down</b> the prince.	* =	
The prince felt <b>loaded down by / with</b> worries.	* overbebyrdet af ngt.	
<b>Weighed with</b> worries, he felt <b>left out on a limb</b> .	* =	* ~ overladt til sin egen skæbne ( ude på en gren )
<b>Weighed down by</b> worries, he felt <b>out on a limb</b> .	* =	
The young prince only gradually <b>awakened to the fact that</b>	* vågne op til >	* det faktum / den kendsgerning at -
he was now the <b>heir</b> to the <b>crown / throne</b> .	* arving til >	* kronen / tronen
He'd had to face <b>in earnest</b> that the <b>main burden of</b>	* for alvor	* hoved- * byrden ~ den største belastning >
ruling the monarchy would <b>fall (up)on</b> him as the future king.	* ved at -	
Having to <b>carry a heavy burden / load of</b> responsibility,	* bære >	* tung byrde af ( ansvar )
he'd have to <b>bear a heavy burden / load</b> of responsibility.	* - = -	
<b>20</b> Being a crown prince was a <b>heavy burden / load</b>	* tung byrde / voldsom belastning	
( for the young prince ) to <b>carry / bear</b> .	* at bære / udholde	
If unable to <b>bear</b> the <b>burden / load of</b> responsibility,	* bære / udholde byrden af ( ansvar )	
he'd never be able to <b>bear</b> the <b>burden / load of</b> being a king.	* & klare belastningen	
' I try to <b>wipe ( ) out / erase</b> the <b>memory of</b> the sad episodes,	* bortviske	* mindet om ngt.
I try to <b>wipe / erase</b> these episodes <b>from</b> my <b>mind / memory</b> ,	* ~ viske ngt. bort fra >	* sindet / hukommelsen
but you can never <b>wipe out / erase</b> the <b>past</b> ,' the prince had	* bortviske >	* fortiden
<b>sighed heavily</b> .	* sukke	* dybt, tungt langsomt og sørgmodigt
He often retired to his <b>den</b> to sit in <b>gloomy / glum silence</b> ,	* et mindre rum, hvor man kan være sig selv	* tungsindig * stilhed
or he <b>sought refuge</b> in their old <b>gloomy den</b> in the woods	* søge tilflugt i >	* mørk, trist * hemmelig legehule
<b>30</b> and sat staring <b>gloomily / glumly</b> into the air .	* trist	
He had many <b>rough nights</b> ; spending many <b>wakeful</b> nights,	* urolig	* vågne ( nætter )
he spent many <b>sleepless</b> nights <b>in agony</b> .	* søvnløse ( nætter )	* i fysisk / psykisk smerte ~ forpint af sjælskvaler
<b>Chronic sleeplessness</b> is called <b>insomnia</b> .	* kronisk	* -hed
He desperately needed to <b>get some sleep</b> .	* få noget søvn	
Even if <b>counting sheep</b> and doing everything else	* falde i søvn	
to <b>fall asleep</b> , he spent half the night trying to <b>get to sleep</b> .	* =	* =
Eventually having <b>fallen into a fitful</b> and <b>uneasy sleep</b> ,	* falde i en >	* periodevis * urolig * søvn urolig uafslappet ( periode )
he <b>slept fitfully</b> and <b>uneasily disturbed</b> by nightmares,	* sove * periodevis * uroligt * forstyrre / uroligt uafslappet forurolige ng.	
and woke up <b>under a cloud of gloom</b> and despair.	* ~ tynget af ngt.	* mismod

<b>430</b> His poor physical condition was a result / consequence of	*
the close <b>relationship between</b> mental and physical health.	* forhold mellem ngt.
<b>Fitful</b> and <b>uneasy sleep worsened</b> his <b>anxiety</b> ,	* urolig * uafslappet * søvn * forværre > * uro bekymring
He often <b>cried aloud</b> in his <b>sleep</b> .	* råbe højt * i søvne
He spend many nights <b>sleeplessly pacing</b> the <b>floor</b> .	* søvnløst * ~ gå op og ned ad > * gulvet ~ på søvnløs maner
His walking <b>sleepless</b> ( pred.) up and down the floor	* søvnløs
<b>darkened</b> his <b>mood</b> and <b>deepened</b> his <b>gloom</b> alarmingly.	* formørke > * humør * ~ forværre / * sindsformørkelse forstærke > mismod
He didn't <b>get</b> much <b>sleep</b> or didn't <b>get</b> any <b>sleep</b> at all.	* få ... søvn
His <b>mood darkened</b> and his <b>gloom deepened</b> at the worry.	* mismod > * forværres / forstærkes
<b>10</b> As <b>lack of sleep`aggravated</b> an <b>emergent depression</b> ,	* forværre ngt. * ~ spirende * depression
he <b>sank</b> further and further <b>into dark depression</b> .	* synke > * ~ ( længere og ... ) ned i > * dyb / svær ...
<b>Suffering from</b> a <b>severe deep depression</b> ,	* lide af > * svær * dyb * =
he <b>lived through</b> the <b>darkest days</b> of his youth.	* ~ gennemleve * mørkeste * dage, ~ periode
He had <b>relived</b> a childish fear of <b>the dark</b> .	* genopleve ngt. * mørket
Afraid that his eyes couldn't <b>penetrate</b> the darkness / gloom,	* ( øjne ) trænge gennem ( mørket )
he was afraid of <b>the dark</b> ; so he only stayed out <b>until dark</b> ,	* & mørkeræd
took care to be home <b>before dark</b> , and didn't go out <b>after dark</b> .	* før mørkets frembrud * efter ...
If he <b>woke up at night</b> , he <b>felt uneasy about</b> ( imagining )	* vågne op om natten * føle sig utilpas / urolig ûn`i~si / uhyggelig til mode ved ngt.
the darkness of the windows behind the curtains.	*
<b>20</b> Even if a <b>light</b> was <b>burning</b> in the prince's room all night,	* lys * brænde
the <b>darkened</b> windows appeared <b>darkly sinister</b> .	* mørkblevne * mørk, dystert * ildevarslende, dystert truende skummelt, uhyggeligt
<b>Oddly enough</b> , during the day in the <b>dark</b> winter days,	* mærkeligt nok * mørk ( dag )
he sought isolation in a <b>dark</b> and quiet room full of	* mørkt ( rum )
<b>heavy</b> furniture surrounded by walls <b>painted in dark colours</b>	* tunge ( møbler ) * malet i / * mørke * farver bemalet med >
and <b>wainscots</b> (o-f) in <b>dark-coloured</b> wood.	* vægpanel * mørkfarvet
Although his valet tried everything to <b>lighten</b> his <b>mood (up)</b> ,	* lette ngs. sindsstemning bringe ng. i bedre humøret
the prince's mood didn't <b>lighten (up)</b> .	* lette
He felt <b>in the power of</b> the <b>dark forces</b> of his imagination	* i ngs. vold * mørke magter
as if <b>in the mercy</b> of the <b>dark forces</b> of the universe.	* = * =
<b>30</b> He felt haunted by <b>the forces</b> and <b>powers of darkness</b> .	* mørkets / onde magter
To <b>crown it all</b> , a candle had <b>set</b> a curtain <b>on fire</b> ;	* oven i det hele * sætte ngt. brand
it had <b>set`fire /eE`light to / ignited</b> a <b>lace</b> curtain.	* sætte ild til / * knibling ig`naitid antænde ngt.
The candle had <b>set</b> a curtain <b>alight</b> , and as the curtain	* sætte ild i / til
<b>was alight</b> , some <b>woodwork</b> had <b>caught alight</b> .	/ i brand * stå i brand / flammer * træværk * gå i brand
So the room was soon filled with a <b>haze</b> of smoke.	* tåge
Luckily, the <b>fire</b> had been <b>put out / stopped burning</b>	* ild > * ~ blive slukket
but the prince had been <b>overcome by the smoke</b> .	* ~ få røgforgiftning
The rescuer had <b>wondered</b> ( <b>that</b> ) the prince had survived.	* undre sig over at -

431 Although the smoke had <b>asphyxiated</b> the prince, he soon regained consciousness and escaped death.	* kvæle ng. af iltmangel røg- / gasforgifte ng. ( så de besvimer og evt. dør ) *
Dizzy after the <b>asphyxiation</b> , he was feeling <b>light-`headed</b> ;	* røgforgiftning
unable to <b>think clearly</b> and <b>move steadily</b> .	* tænke > * klart * bevæge sig > * ør i hovedet uklar, svimmel * ~ med jævne bevægelser
The prince was <b>ailing</b> (o-f) for weeks.	* være syg
The <b>after-effects</b> of the <b>asphyxia</b> kept <b>ailing</b> him.	* eftervirkning * kvælningstilstand * gøre ng. syg
When someone is depressed, physical <b>sickness</b>	* sygdom
<b>puts</b> an <b>extra load</b> on the victim.	* lægge en ekstra byrde på
The <b>extra load</b> of physical <b>illness</b> worsened the situation.	* =
<b>10</b> For a long time he had suffered from <b>light-`headedness</b>	* svimmelhed
and other <b>minor ailments</b> .	* mindre alvorlige sygdomme
His long <b>illness</b> was a <b>heavy burden</b> to <b>bear / carry</b> .	* sygdomstilstand * tung byrde at bære voldsom belastning at udholde
It was a <b>heavy load</b> to <b>bear / carry</b> .	* =
All the <b>agony / &lt;ies</b> of his brother's death had <b>aged</b> him.	* lidelse * få ng. til at føle sig / fysisk / psykisk smerte virke ældre
His brother's death was a <b>millstone</b> (a)round his <b>neck</b> .	* en møllesten om hans hals, ~ et tyngende problem
The <b>future</b> had long <b>looked depressing / gloomy</b> .	* fremtiden > * se > * mørk / dyster / trist ud
To the prince, life had felt like a <b>continuous / uninterrupted</b>	* fortsat / uafbrudt
<b>series</b> of <b>cloudy</b> and <b>gloomy</b> days.	* ~ række * skyede * triste * dage
The <b>father-son relationship</b> is an important factor.	* ... relation / forhold
<b>20</b> <b>Father-son relations</b> are very important.	* =
The prince <b>had</b> quite a good <b>relationship with</b> his father.	* have > * ~ ( godt ) forhold til ng.
Hoping there <b>was light at the end of the tunnel</b> , the King	* lys for enden af tunnelen
<b>put</b> all his <b>energy into lightening</b> the atmosphere ( <b>up</b> ).	* lægge > * energi ind i at - * løfte ( stemningen )
Trying to <b>lighten</b> his son's <b>cares</b> and <b>worries</b> ,	* lette > * bekymringer * =
the King tried to <b>lighten</b> his son's <b>mood / spirits</b> ( <b>up</b> ).	* løfte > * humør / = ~ få ng. op med humøret
' Even in the <b>darkest moments</b> , I still have you, my son,	* mørkeste * stunder
and <b>every cloud has a silver lining</b> , he said <b>encouragingly</b> .	* oven over skyerne er himmelen altid blå
' I suppose so,' the prince answered <b>heavily</b> .	* tungt, ~ langsomt og sørgmodigt
Catching the <b>glimmer(ing) of a smile</b> in his son's <b>eyes</b> ,	* ~ antydningen af et smil i ng's øjne
<b>30</b> the King <b>sensed</b> a <b>gleam / glimmer(ing) of hope</b> .	* ane / fornemme ngt. * glimt af > * håb
<b>For a change</b> , a few glasses of beer or wine	* til en forandring
made the crown prince feel <b>light-hearted</b> and more optimistic.	* let om hjertet munter, sorgløs
Back in a <b>light-hearted mood</b> it might happen that he had	* i godt humør
a glass too many – <b>these things happen</b> – and began to	* det er, hvad der kan ske
feel <b>light-`headed</b> .	* svimmel, ør uklar
<b>Light-`headedness</b> had turned into <b>light-`headedness</b> .	* munter- / sorgløshed * svimmel- / ør- uklarhed
The alcohol finally <b>made</b> him <b>sleepy / drowsy</b>	* gøre ng. søvnig / døsig
and <b>sent him to sleep</b> , quite <b>loaded</b> (pred.).	* få ng. til at falde i søvn * beruset fuld

<b>432</b> In the morning the valet left him to <b>sleep it off</b> .	* sove den ud
He <b>slept solidly for</b> ten hours.	* i træk
If not yet a <b>sound sleeper</b> , the alcohol for once made him	* sund ~ person, der har en sund søvn * sover
into a <b>solid sleeper</b> , having <b>slept</b> the day <b>away</b> .	* stabil ... * sove ( dagen ) bort
Having <b>slept right through</b> all kinds of everyday noise,	* sove fra ngt.
he had eventually <b>slept ( )` off</b> his <b>hangover</b>	* sove > væk * tømmermænd
even though he feels a bit <b>fragile</b> (E) after last night.	* ~ ømskindet, skidt tilpas
Normally he couldn't <b>sleep</b> because of the noise.	* sove
As he was told he'd <b>got sleep in</b> his <b>eyes</b> ,	* have søvn i > * øjnene
<b>10</b> he <b>rubbed</b> the <b>sleep from</b> the <b>corner of</b> his <b>eyes</b> .	* gnide ... væk fra > * øjenkrogene
Finally beginning to <b>see the light at the end of the tunnel</b>	* se lyset for enden af tunellen
the King, who <b>was in poor health</b> , succeeded to	* være i dårlig helbredstilstand
<b>awaken</b> his son <b>to</b> his responsibility as a crown prince.	* skrante
The prince's <b>depression</b> seemed to be <b>lifting</b> at last.	* få ng. til at få øjnene op for / indse * depression > * lette
A bad dream might still <b>awaken</b> terrible memories and fears.	* vække ( vakte, vakt ) ngt.
So terrible memories, and <b>fear for</b> the future might <b>awaken</b> .	* frygt for ( fremtiden ) * vågne, ~ dukke op
Occasionally, he <b>lay awake</b> at night worrying, by turns	* ligge vågen
<b>drifting into</b> a <b>light doze</b> and <b>waking up from</b> a <b>light sleep</b>	* glide ind i > * let døse * vågne op af * let søvn
Worrying over the future, he <b>lay awake half the night</b> ,	* << * den halve nat
<b>20</b> trying to <b>go back to sleep</b> and <b>get back to sleep</b> .	* ~ falde i søvn igen * =
<b>Light-` headed</b> , dizzy as during a fever,	* svimmel
he wasn't sure whether he was <b>half awake</b> or <b>half asleep</b> .	* ør i hovedet * halvt vågen * halvsovende
He spent many a <b>wakeful</b> night until his <b>wakefulness</b>	* vågen
<b>wore off</b> , and he was able to <b>fall into</b> a <b>deep</b> and <b>heavy sleep</b> .	* søvnløs * fortage sig * falde i > * dyb og tung søvn
Again he <b>slept well</b> , <b>soundly</b> and <b>solidly</b> .	* sove godt * = * stabilt
As before he would wake up after a <b>good night's sleep</b>	* en god nats søvn
<b>as fit as a fiddle</b> , <b>as sound as a bell</b> , <b>on top of the world</b>	* frisk som en fisk / havørn
<b>as right as rain</b> , having <b>slept like a log</b> .	* = * sove som en sten
Able to <b>doze off</b> and <b>drift into</b> a <b>peaceful dreamless sleep</b>	* døse bort * glide ind i en ... søvn
<b>30</b> he would wake up having <b>slept like a baby</b> .	* sove som > * ( baby ), ~ en sten
As the prince's cares and worries seemed to <b>lighten</b> ,	* ( bekymringer ) lette
his <b>mood / spirits</b> gradually <b>lightened (up)</b> .	* ngs. humør blive bedre / sindsstemning letter
Eventually the old prince was back <b>alight with</b> excitement,	* - = -
and a <b>humorous glint</b> in his <b>eyes</b> .	* lysende af ngt. * humorfyldt * glimt i øjnene
Once again his presence would <b>light ( ) up</b> the room.	* ~ lyse op i ngt. humoristisk
The whole <b>atmosphere</b> in the palace <b>lightened (up)</b> .	* stemning * lette
As amusement again <b>glimmered in</b> the prince's <b>eyes</b> ,	* glimte i ng's øjne
recovery <b>took a load` off</b> the <b>mind</b> of the royal family.	* lette en byrde fra ngs. sind
The recovery of the prince <b>was a load off</b> their mind.	* en byrde lettet fra ngs. sind

<b>433</b> As they <b>aged</b> , the old King <b>lightened</b> his valet's <b>duties</b> ;	* ældes	* lette
he <b>lightened</b> his <b>workload</b> and <b>burden</b> of <b>responsibility</b> .	blive ældre * arbejdsbyrde	* ansvars * lette ngt.
An assistant valet took care of the <b>hard</b> and <b>heavy work</b>	* hårdt ...	
while the <b>ag(e)ing</b> valet was <b>spared to do light(er)</b> work.	* aldrende	* afse til at - * lettere ( arbejde )
He only had a few <b>light duties</b> and some <b>light housework</b>	* let (-te) >	* pligter * ... husarbejde
to do around the King.	*	
Having profitted from a happy <b>master-servant relationship</b> ,	* herre-tjener forhold	
the old valet had a long career <b>crowned with</b> a peaceful	* kronet med ngt.	
<b>retirement</b> .	* tilbagetrækning	
<b>10</b> The new King still likes to <b>be woken (up)</b> at dawn by	* blive vækket	
the first rays of the sun <b>pouring / spilling / streaming</b> through	* vælde / strømme ( gennem ngt.)	
the windows and <b>wake (up)</b> to a <b>clear blue</b> sky,	* vågne op til ngt.	* ~ skyfri * blå ( himmel )
and a day of <b>brilliant sunshine</b> .	* strålende solskin	
The King regularly pays a visit to his subjects in charge.	*	
Many hills are <b>crowned with</b> a castle so the local	* have ngt. på toppen	
nobleman is able to watch the King and his retinue riding to	*	
the <b>crown</b> of the hill and on into the castle.	* top	
When a nobleman is appointed to an important post	*	
he sees it as the <b>crowning achievement</b> of his career.	* kronen på værket	
<b>20</b> His earnest efforts are finally <b>crowned with</b> success.	* ~ seriøse ( anstrengelser )	* krone med ( succes )
His appointment <b>crowns</b> a glorious <b>career</b> in the King's	* krone >	* karriere
service.	* ~ udgøre højdepunktet	
An incident may <b>wake</b> a forgotten memory or feeling.	* vække ( vakte, vakt ) ( fig. kun vt ! )	
The King <b>recollects</b> his childhood, and <b>reminisces about</b>	* genkalde sig ngt.	* mindes om ( hvxx )
how he liked to <b>be wakened (up)</b> by <b>bird song, chirps,</b>	* blive vækket	* fuglesang * kvidder pip
and <b>warbles</b> as he <b>wakened (up)</b> to the sound of <b>warblers</b>	* kvidder	vågne op til / ved ngt. * sangfugl
singing, <b>chirping</b> /E& <b>chirruping</b> , and <b>warbling</b> outside.	* pip * kvidre pippe	* =
It <b>troubles</b> the King <b>that</b> his dreams often <b>waken</b> memories	* bekymre / plage ng. at -	* vække ( vakte, vakt ) ( fig. kun vt ! )
and feelings of his past sufferings.	*	
<b>30</b> Many of his <b>disturbing</b> and <b>troubling</b> feelings seem to be	* ~ foruroligende oprørende	* bekymrende plagsomme
a <b>hangover</b> ( <b>from</b> his childhood ).	* et levn ( fra ngt. )	
<b>Dozing fitfully</b> , he dreams about his elder brother,	* døse	* i perioder uroligt
how he <b>was awoken by</b> the sound of <b>crying</b> and <b>weeping</b>	* blive vækket af ngt.	* råben, skrigen græden, gråd
and how he <b>awakened to</b> the sound of tumult and turmoil.	* vågne til ngt.	* græden gråd
<b>What is it that troubles you ?</b> the King's valet might ask,	* hvad er det der bekymrer / plager dig	
and then <b>chirp</b> /E& <b>chirrup</b> , ' Come on, <b>lighten up</b> ! '	* sige muntert	
as he tries to cheer the King up by <b>humming</b> a cheerful <b>tune</b> .	* nynne ngt.	* melodi
<b>Humming softly to himself</b> , the valet likes to <b>potter</b> E/A	* nynne blidt	* for sig selv
<b>putter around</b> / E& <b>about</b> ( the <b>house</b> ).	* trisse / tusse omkring	* i huset

THE FUTURE QUEEN

<b>434</b> The King's love for <b>the object / bride of his choice</b>	* hans udkårne
and her love for <b>the object of her choice</b> is an <b>open secret</b> .	* hendes ... * offentlig hemmelighed
An <b>expectant smile</b> keeps <b>lighting () up</b> the King's <b>face</b> .	* forventningsfuldt * smil * ~ få ngs. ansigt til at lyse op
His <b>eyes</b> , his whole <b>face</b> and <b>expression light up</b>	* øjne * ansigt * udtryk * lyse op
<b>with joy</b> when he <b>projects her as</b> the queen-to-be.	* ~ af ( glæde ) * ~ kommende ( dronning )
The young lady indeed <b>returns</b> his <b>love</b> .	* ~ gengælde > * kærlighed
They both feel they have <b>achieved</b> their <b>heart's desire</b> .	* få opfyldt > * sit inderste ønske
In court circles, everybody can <b>hear wedding bells</b> (fig.).	* høre > * bryllups- * klokkerne ( ringe )
The King <b>can hardly wait</b> to <b>ask for her hand</b> .	* næsten ikke kunne vente med at - * anmode om ngs. hånd
<b>10</b> He <b>can't wait</b> to <b>ask for her hand in marriage</b> .	* ikke kunne vente med at - * =
She's a woman of <b>wit</b> , charm, and intelligence.	* vid, kløgt, forstand
She has a quick and <b>ready wit</b> , <b>happily</b> dry and sharp.	* ~ kvik * - = - * ~ velvalgt og passende
Being a <b>wit</b> , she's always <b>good for a happy witty</b> remark.	* kvik og vittig person * god for * = * kvik
Her future <b>in-laws</b> (pl.), her future <b>father-in-law</b>	* svigerforældre (-familie) * svigerfar
and <b>mother-in-law</b> , and other <b>relatives by marriage</b> ,	* svigermor * ægteskabeligt beslægtede familie-
<b>welcome</b> their future <b>daughter-in-law with open arms</b> .	medlemmer * byde ng. velkommen * svigerdatter * med åbne arme
Even if it <b>worries</b> her to think about being a queen,	* det bekymrer ng. at -
she'd love to <b>give</b> the King her <b>hand ( in marriage )</b> .	* give ng. sin hånd
So she accepts his proposal <b>unhesitatingly</b> .	* uden tøven
<b>20</b> They are going to <b>wed</b> (o-f) / get married as soon possible.	* ~ blive gift
The <b>bride-to-be can't wait</b> – she <b>can hardly wait</b> .	* kommende brud * ikke kunne vente * næsten ...
She <b>can't wait to</b> tell the good news –	* - - - med at -
she <b>can hardly wait</b> to <b>wed</b> (o-f) / marry the King.	* næsten - - - med at - * blive gift med ng.
Though she <b>responds to</b> his attempts to <b>lighten her worry</b> ,	* reagere på ngt. * lette > * bekymring
she still <b>awaits</b> the <b>coming</b> wedding with some <b>anxiety</b> .	* se frem til ngt. * kommende * nervøsitet forestående spænding / ængstelse
Yet the <b>future</b> queen <b>can't wait for</b> the wedding.	* kommende * ikke kunne > * vente til ngt. fremtidig
She <b>can hardly wait for</b> the wedding.	* næsten - - -
She <b>can't wait / can hardly wait for</b> the <b>big day to come</b> .	* - - - / - - - * på ngt. ⇔ at - * store dag * oprinde
She <b>can't wait to go down the aisle</b> .	* ikke vente på at - * ... ( kirke-) midtergang ail blive gift
<b>30</b> She <b>can hardly wait to walk down the aisle</b> .	* næsten - - - * =
The morning before the day <b>long awaited</b> ,	* længe ventet
the sky is <b>overcast</b> , covered with ( a <b>blanket of</b> ) low <b>cloud</b> .	* overskyet (* tæppe at > ) * ( lavt ) skydække
The landscape around the palace <b>stretches out</b>	* folde sig ud, ligge udstrakt
<b>under a cloudy</b> grey morning <b>sky</b> .	* under > * skyet * himmel
Later in the morning, the day before the wedding <b>anxiously</b>	* med ængstelse
<b>awaited</b> , the <b>cloud scatters</b> so the sky is just <b>lightly clouded</b> .	* ventet * skylag * lette * let > * skyet spredes
In the <b>slightly overcast sky</b> , the <b>scattered clouds</b>	* ~ på > * let * overskyet * himmel * spredte * skyer
<b>sail across</b> the <b>sky</b> above the <b>rooftop</b> .	* sejle over > * himlen * tagryg

<b>435</b> Already long before noon the sky is almost <b>unclouded</b> ;	* skyfri
it's almost <b>cloudless / uncloudy</b> .	* =
As the last clouds soon disappear, and there's a <b>view of</b>	* udsigt til
an <b>uncloudy blue sky</b> , it turns into an <b>uncloudy calm day</b> .	* skyfri * blå * himmel * skyfri * vindstille * dag
Eventually it's a <b>cloudless calm summer day</b>	* skyfri * vindstille * sommer- * dag
where the landscape <b>spreads out to</b> the horizon	* folde sig ud, ligge udstrakt
under a <b>cloudless blue summer sky</b> .	* skyfri * blå * sommer- * himmel
There isn't a cloud in the sky; the <b>sky is completely clear</b> .	* himlen * helt * klar
The <b>sun is shining brightly high in the sky</b> .	* solen * skinne * klart * højt * ~ på himmelen
<b>10</b> For hours it <b>shines in</b> a clear <b>cloudless sky</b> .	* ( sol ) * skinne * på / ~ fra > * klar * skyfri * ...
The sun is shining in a sky <b>completely free of cloud</b> (U).	* fuldstændig * ~ skyfri
The <b>skylarks soar skyward(s)</b> .	* sanglærke * stige * op mod himmelen svæve ~ til vejrs
Looking <b>skywards</b> you see them, and hear them singing	* =
<b>flying high up</b> , and <b>soaring in</b> the ( <b>open</b> ) <b>sky</b> .	* flyve * højt oppe * svæve højt * på > * himlen ( den åbne himmel )
It's been a period of <b>blue skies</b> and warm sunshine.	* blå * ~ himmel
Late in the afternoon <b>dark clouds</b> appear in the distance.	* mørk * sky
As the <b>clouds</b> approach, it becomes more and more <b>cloudy</b> .	* sky * ( over- ) skyet
It <b>clouds over</b> as the sky <b>clouds over</b> .	* blive overskyet
So the <b>skies</b> are <b>overcast</b> , and the weather is <b>cloudy</b> .	* overskyet
<b>20</b> As the sky is <b>cloudy</b> , it's suddenly a grey and <b>cloudy</b> day.	* skyet
Every time the <b>dark clouds</b> hide the sun, the sky <b>darkens</b> .	* mørk sky * blive mørkere formørkes
As <b>masses</b> of <b>heavy clouds</b> <b>gather</b> , they <b>darken</b> the sky.	* masser af > * tunge * skyer * samle sig * formørke trække sammen
Soon the sky is <b>covered with</b> a <b>mass</b> of <b>dense clouds</b> .	* være overdække af > * masse af > * tætte * skyer ~ tæt skydække
It looks like <b>storm clouds</b> and <b>stormy weather</b> .	* uvejrssky * uvej
The <b>heavy sky</b> means that a storm is coming.	* tung himmel
They stare out of the windows as <b>darkness gathers</b> ,	* mørket * ( samle sig ) ~ sænker sig
and the hills appear as a dark <b>mass</b> in the distance.	* masse
' The air is <b>heavy</b> – it's very <b>heavy</b> – it looks like storm –	* trykkende * = tung
I think there will be a <b>thunderstorm</b> ,' she <b>points out</b> .	* tordervejr * påpege konstatere
<b>30</b> Once in a while, when there's a <b>rift in</b> the <b>clouds</b> ,	* sprække i > * ~ skydækket
the sun <b>peeps out</b> ( <b>from behind</b> the <b>thick clouds</b> ).	* ( solen ) titte frem * fra ngt. * tykke * skyer ~ skjult bag ngt. ~skydække
Only when the clouds <b>part</b> , and <b>beams, rays</b> ,	* skiller * stråle > * =
and <b>shafts of</b> ( <b>sun</b> >) <b>light</b> fall on the ground,	* ... af > * ( sol- ) lys
a few <b>gleams</b> of sunlight <b>light</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the gloomy afternoon.	* genskær af ngt. * oplyse ngt.
As the sky <b>darkens</b> , a few <b>drops</b> of <b>light rain</b> begin to fall.	* blive mørkere * dråbe * let regn
As the sky <b>grows darker</b> , it looks like <b>thundery</b> weather.	* blive mørkere * vejr med torden
There is a <b>light breeze</b> before it begins to <b>rain lightly</b> .	* let * brise * regne * let
The King <b>rolls down</b> his <b>sleeves</b> and <b>buttons</b> the <b>cuffs</b> .	* rulle > * ærmerne ned * knappe > * manchetterne

<b>436</b> Suddenly there's a <b>cloudburst</b> , but after a sudden short	* skybrud
<b>heavy fall of</b> rain, the wind <b>abates</b> ; it becomes <b>calm</b> again.	* kraftig * nedbør af ( regn ) * ( vind ) aftage * vindstille / stilne af
The <b>air is heavy, still</b> and <b>humid / muggy / sultry</b> .	* luften * tung * stillestående * fugtig lummervarm
As <b>the calm before the storm</b> , the calm weather is soon	* stilhed før stormen ( uvejr )
succeeded by <b>strong wind(s)</b> and <b>intermittent showers</b> :	* stærk, kraftig * vind(e) * tilbagevendende * byge vekslende
<b>heavy showers</b> of both <b>rain</b> and <b>hail</b> .	* stærk * byge af > * regn * hagl (-vejr ) kraft
As <b>heavy rain</b> and <b>hail showers</b> alternate,	* = * regn- * hagl- * byge
it <b>rains</b> and <b>hails</b> alternately.	* regne * hagle
At first it rains or <b>hails intermittently</b>	* med mellemrum
<b>10</b> but when it starts to <b>rain</b> or <b>hail heavily</b> constantly,	* regne * hagle * kraftigt
<b>thunderous sky</b> (U) and <b>thunderous rain</b>	* tordenagtig * himmel * regn
<b>suggest that a thunderstorm is brewing ( up )</b> .	* tyde på at - * tordenvejr * trække op
<b>Thunder</b> is likely when the <b>thunderclouds gather</b> .	* torden * tordensky * samle sig
You <b>are in for</b> a storm with <b>thunder</b> and <b>lightning</b>	* ~ man kan vist vente > * torden * lynen ~lyn og torden
when you hear the <b>rumble</b> and <b>roar of</b> distant <b>thunder</b> .	* rumlen af ...
It <b>thunders</b> and <b>lightens ominously</b> in the distance	* tordne * lyne * ildevarslende
as the distant <b>rolls of thunder</b> is nearing. <i>Look at page 500 !!</i>	* rumlen af ...
Suddenly everybody is <b>startled by a thunderbolt</b> .	* overraske / forbløffe * lyn og tordenskrald forskrække / opskræmme ng.
All are shocked by a <b>flash</b> of extremely <b>bright light</b> ;	* ( lys-) glimt * klart / kraftigt lys
<b>20</b> a flash of <b>dazzling</b> and <b>blinding light</b> .	* blændende * blændende ...
They experience an extremely bright <b>flash of lightning</b>	* lyn (-glimt )
accompanied by a <b>startling thunderclap</b> , a <b>startlingly great</b>	* overraske- / forbløffe- * tordenskrald * = forskrække- / opskræmmende
<b>clap / crack / crash of thunder</b> .	* =
Everybody <b>looks startled</b> as <b>lightning flashes overhead</b> .	* overrasket, forbløffet * lynen * glimte * ovenover forskrækket, opskræmt lyne hovedet / -rne
The <b>thunder booms</b> and <b>crashes</b> around them	* torden * buldre * brage
and <b>startle</b> the servants.	* overraske, forbløffe forskrække, opskræmme
Looking at each other <b>with startled eyes</b> , some frightened	* <<<
servants come <b>thundering</b> downstairs like <b>startled rabbits</b> .	* tordne * opskræmte * kanin brage
Having <b>clapped</b> and <b>cracked around</b> the palace for a while,	* =
<b>30</b> the <b>thunder, preceded by gleams</b> of lightning,	* torden * ~ komme efter ngt. * svag lysglimt af ngt.
<b>dies out rolling, roaring, and rumbling</b> in the distance.	* dø ud * rumle * = * =
Houses and trees are exposed to <b>lightning strokes</b> .	* lynnedslag
The <b>thatch</b> of a <b>thatch</b> easily <b>kindles</b> .	* tækkehalm * stråtag * antændes
If a house is <b>hit by lightning</b> , flames and a fire may <b>kindle</b> .	* ramt af > * lynet * ( flammer / ild ) blusse op
Suddenly they notice a <b>light</b> in the distance.	* lys
Something has likely been <b>struck by lightning</b> .	* ramt af lynet
A <b>lightning stroke</b> may have <b>lit / kindled</b> a <b>fire</b> .	* lynnedslag * antænde > * ild, ( ilde-) brand
After a while the sky <b>lights up</b> ; flames <b>light ( ) up</b> the sky.	* lyse op * oplyse ngt.
The fire <b>kindles</b> the sky in the far distance.	* oplyse ngt.

<b>437</b> The <b>residents wait for</b> the storm <b>to abate</b> .	* beboer	* vente på ngt. <=> at - *	( uvejr ) stilne af
As the storm stops, it is followed by a <b>showery</b> evening.	* bygepræget		
( Years later the palace is provided with	*		
a <b>lightning conductor</b> (E) or <b>lightning rod</b> (A)	* lynafleder		* = ( stang )
which <b>diverts</b> lightning <b>away</b> from the building.	* lede ngt. bort aflede ngt.		
If sb. or sth. in America is a <b>lightning rod for</b> attention	* afleder for ngt.		
criticism, blame etc. he gets most of it. )	*		
' <b>Lightning never strikes ( in the same place ) twice</b> ' –	* lynet rammer ikke samme sted to gange		
that is a <b>qualified truth</b> .	* sandhed med modification		
<b>10</b> Many nights they sit <b>in front of</b> the <b>fireplace</b>	* ~ foran >		* ildsted, kamin
and talk <b>by the light of</b> the fire.	* lyskær		
Every day, a servant <b>kindles</b> a fire in fireplace.	* antænde ( ild )		
Everything looks grey <b>in the dim light of</b> the flames.	* ... svag lys fra		
When it's <b>bedtime</b> they go to the <b>bedroom</b> .	* sengetid		* soveværelse
The King <b>lights</b> their <b>way</b> .	* lyse vej		
Carrying a lamp which won't <b>blow out</b> , he <b>lights the way</b> .	* blæses ud		* lyse vej
' <b>Shine a light</b> over here, will you ? she asks him.	* lyse		
Having <b>blown / put ( ) `out</b> the <b>light(s)</b> ,	* puste / slukke >		* lyset ( lysene )
except for the <b>delicate flame</b> of a <b>solitary light</b>	* svag	* flamme	* enligt
<b>20</b> <b>burning dimly</b> in the room, they <b>go straight to bed</b> .			* lys
The King <b>blows / puts out</b> the <b>candle glimmering</b>	* brænde	* svagt	* gå lige i seng
on his <b>bedside table</b> .	* puste > ud / slukke	* lys	* lyse svagt og flimrende
Having <b>gone to bed</b> to <b>sleep</b> , they <b>go out like a light</b> .	* sengebord		
Falling asleep <b>in each other's arms</b>	* gå i seng for at sove		* gå ud som et lys
they <b>are both out like a light</b> .	* i armene på hinanden		
The King is a <b>heavy breather</b> ; he <b>breathes heavily</b> .	* være gået ud som et lys		
The future queen is lulled to sleep by his <b>heavy breathing</b> .	* en der ånder / trækker vejret tungt		* ...
As they may only have a <b>short sleep</b> the next night,	* tungt åndedræt / vejtrækning		
they need a <b>good and restful sleep</b> .	* ... søvn		
<b>30</b> When they <b>go to sleep</b> , they <b>drift / fall into a deep sleep</b> .	* ... og afslappet ...		
So having <b>got to sleep</b> and <b>drifted / fallen into slumber(s)</b> ,	* lægge sig til at sove	* glide ind / falde i en dyb søvn	
they <b>pass into ( a ) deep slumber / deep slumbers</b> .	* falde i søvn		* =
The King <b>wakes (up)</b> at seven when it's starting to <b>get light</b> .	* falde i ( en ) dyb ...		
<b>Waking (up)</b> at first `light, he doesn't feel <b>sleepy</b> .	* =		* blive lyst
When he <b>awakens</b> , he feels <b>awake</b> .	* =	* så snart det bliver lyst	* søvniq
He doesn't <b>wake ( up )</b> his fiancée.	* vågne		* vågen
He doesn't <b>wake</b> his fiancée <b>up</b> but lets her <b>sleep `on</b>	* vække ng.		
<b>for</b> another hour.	* =		* sove videre
The King <b>wakens</b> his sleeping fiancée ( <b>up</b> ) at eight.	* ~ en time mere		
	* vække ng.		

<b>438</b> A cold grey light creeps under the heavy velvet curtains.	* koldt ...	* snige sig ind under	* tung
The King <b>draws ( back ) / pulls back / opens</b> the curtains	* ~ trække gardinerne til side		
to <b>let in the light</b> .	* lade lyset komme ind		
The morning <b>light comes streaming in</b> through	*		
the <b>silken draw-curtains edged with lace</b> .	* fortræksgardin	* kantet med >	* knibling
' <b>Wakey – wakey, wake up, love</b> , it's eight,' the King	* vågne		* min kære
<b>warbles</b> .	* synge med kvidrende stemme		
Even though he <b>awakens</b> her gently, she's <b>awakes</b> at once	* =		* vågen
at the <b>warble</b> of his voice.	* kvidren		
<b>10</b> ' <b>What time did you wake (up) ?</b> ' she asks.	* hvad tid / hvornår vågnede du		
' It was <b>light</b> when I <b>awoke</b> ,' the King <b>remarks</b> .	* lyst	* vågnede	* gøre opmærksom på
As the <b>rising</b> sun <b>lightened</b> the <b>sky</b> at <b>daybreak</b> ,	* opstigende ( sol )	* gøre >	* lysere * himmel * ( ved ) daggry
and it was beginning to <b>get light</b> at <b>sunrise</b> ,	* blive lyst		* ( ved ) solopgang
the <b>weather lightened</b> at <b>dawn</b> .	* vejret	* blive lysere klare op	* daggry
The <b>light gray</b> and <b>pink eastern</b> sky <b>lightened</b>	* lysegrå	* lyserød	* østlig * & lysne
and, eventually, the morning sky <b>turned light blue</b> .	* blive / forandre sig til ngt.		* lysegrå
The king <b>slept</b> seven hours while the future queen	* sove ( i )		
<b>slept for</b> eight hours.	* ...		
*	*		

## 20 DRESSMAKING

The <b>dressmaker</b> uses a <b>tape measure / measuring tape</b>	* dameskrædder		* målebånd
for <b>measuring</b> ( the body and the dress ).	* måle ( ngt. )		
Using their <b>scissors</b> , the <b>cutter cuts</b> ( ) <b>out</b> the dress.	* saks	* tilskærer	* tilskære ngt.
Using a variety of <b>needles</b> and <b>thread(s)</b> ,	* nål		* tråd
the dressmaker starts to <b>sew</b> .	* sy	* synål	* tråd
<b>Sewing seam after seam</b> , she <b>sews</b> the dress.	* sy >	* søm	* efter ... * sy >
As the future queen <b>is fitted for</b> her wedding dress,	* være til tilpasningsprøvning for ngt.		
she <b>tries</b> ( ) <b>on</b> the <b>sky-blue</b> dress.	* prøve ngt. på		* himmelblå
As the dress is full of <b>needles</b> and <b>pins</b> , she puts her arms	* synåle		* knappenåle
<b>30</b> carefully through the <b>armholes</b> .	* ærmegab		
The <b>arms</b> will need <b>shortening</b> .	* ærme		* afkortning forkortelse
The <b>sleeves</b> will be <b>edged with lace</b> .	* kantet med ngt.		* knibling
The dress <b>fastens at the back</b> ; it <b>laces up</b> at the back	* lukkes	* på bagsiden / ryggen	* snøres
If you stay in an uncomfortable position you may	*	bagi	
<b>get / have pins and needles</b> in a <b>limb</b> : in your arm or leg.	* ~ blive følelsesløs		* lem
Most people involved in the wedding preparations	*	~ arm / ben sover	
<b>are on tenterhooks</b> (eE); they are <b>on pins and needles</b> (A).	* ~ som på nåle		
They <b>wonder if / whether</b> they can make it.	* spekulere på om >		* kan nå det

<b>439</b> At the wedding day it's a <b>light day</b> .	* ~ dag med klart vejr
The <b>bride</b> and <b>groom</b> have a <b>heavy schedule / timetable</b> .	* brud * gom * travl * program * tidsplan ( = brudeparret ) skema skema
Having got a list of things to do <b>as long as your arm</b> ,	* ~ alenlang
the bride and <b>bridegroom</b> are going to have a <b>heavy</b> day.	* brudgom * travl
When the royal couple <b>leave for</b> their wedding,	* tage af sted til ngt.
they <b>start for</b> the church <b>with</b> a <b>light heart</b> .	* tage af sted til ngt. * ~ let om hjertet, i godt humør
The King's <b>eyes light up</b> when his bride <b>comes up</b> the <b>aisle</b> .	* øjen lyse op * komme op ad midtergangen ( kirkegulvet )
His <b>eyes light up with</b> happiness as she <b>goes up</b> the <b>aisle</b> .	* ... lyse af ( glæde ) * gå - - -
A <b>confident gleam lights ( ) up</b> the bride's <b>eyes</b> .	* tillidsfuldt * glimt * få ( ngs.) øjne til at lyse
<b>10</b> A smile <b>lights ( ) up</b> her <b>face</b> .	* få ansigtet til at lyse op
As her <b>face lights up ( with</b> pleasure, joy, and happiness ),	* ansigt * lyse op af ( velbehag etc. )
the King knows he <b>can't face</b> a day without ( being near ) her.	* ~ ikke kunne udholde ( at ) ngt.
<b>Wearing</b> his <b>mitre</b> , a hat or cap, with a tall pointed <b>crown</b> ,	* ikklædt * bispehue * top, puld
the Archbishop <b>joins</b> the happy couple <b>in matrimony</b> .	* forene ng. i ægteskab, ( ægte-) vie ng.
At the <b>wedding ceremony</b> , all his <b>attention</b> is <b>fastened on</b>	* bryllups- * ceremoni * opmærksomhed * fæstnet på / optaget af ngt.
his <b>performing</b> of the proper <b>wedding rites</b> as the groom	* udførelse af > * vielses- * ritual (-er)
and the bride <b>make / take</b> their ( <b>marriage / wedding</b> ) <b>vows</b> .	* ~ aflægge > * ægteskabs- * løfte
A month ago the king had <b>lit (up)on</b> a couple of rings.	* falde over / tilfældigt finde ngt.
He had <b>lighted (up)on</b> a couple of <b>wedding rings / bands</b> .	* = * vielses- * ring
<b>20</b> His <b>eyes</b> had <b>lighted (up)on</b> a couple of choice rings.	* øjne > * falde på ngt.
His <b>eyes</b> had <b>lit (up)on</b> a couple of choice wedding rings.	* =
As the Bishop <b>marry</b> the bride and groom,	* vie ng.
he <b>joins</b> them <b>together in holy matrimony</b> .	* forene ng. i helligt ægteskab
<b>Joined in the bonds of matrimony</b> , they promise to be	* smede ng. i Hymens lænker
truthful <b>during</b> their <b>joint lives</b> .	* ... forenet / fælles ... ( så længe de begge er i live )
What God hath <b>joined</b> let no man <b>put asunder</b> .	* sammenføje / forene ngt. * slå i stykker / itu / fra hinanden
<b>Joined in holy matrimony</b> , the married couple kiss.	* ... i helligt ægtestand
' I'm sure you'll all <b>join</b> me <b>in</b> wishing the King and Queen	* tilslutte sig ng. med at -
a long and happy marriage,' the bishop concludes.	*
<b>30</b> Expecting the King and Queen to be <b>faithfull to the last</b> ,	* tro (-fast ) * til det sidste
all the guests <b>join with</b> the bishop <b>in</b> his wish.	* ~ tilslutte sig ng. i ( deres ønske )
<b>Tears cloud</b> the <b>eyes</b> of the married couple as well as	* tårer > * gøre ngs. øjne uklare
the <b>eyes</b> of many of the wedding guests <b>cloud with tears</b> .	* blive uklar / sløres af tårer
<b>Tears cloud</b> their <b>outlook / vision</b> .	* tårer > * sløre > * ngs. udsyn & gøre ngs. syn uklart
<b>Getting misty-eyed</b> as their eyes <b>grow misty</b> ,	* ~ få fugtige / tårevædede * øjne > * blive ...
some of the guests just see everything as a <b>misty blur</b> .	* sløret * uklarhed
The King and the Queen manage to <b>dry</b> their <b>eyes / tears</b> .	* ~ holde op med at græde

**440 Waiting for the Archbishop to end the wedding,**  
most children sit **patiently waiting for the wedding to end.**

An unruly child doesn't attend **the last of the wedding,**  
as he's send away from **the rest of the ceremony.**

Many guests are **closely or distantly / remotely related.**

'What **relation of / to** the King is the King's **best`man** ?'  
a wedding guest asks his wife.

'A **close / near relation,** a **first cousin** I think,' she answers.

Some family members are **first cousins** while others are

**10 second cousins, or distant / remote cousins.**

'Are the **bridemaids related** –  
are they **related to** the bride –  
what **relative of / to** the bride is the bride's maid ?'  
another guest asks his wife.

'The oldest maid, wearing a **plain** but elegant **dress,**  
is a **close / near relative of / to** the bride  
while the younger ones are more **distant / remote relations -**  
they are more distant / remote **relatives** but I'm not sure of  
the exact **relationship between** them,' his wife answers.

**20 Blood-related relations / relatives are related by blood**

while other relations / relatives are **related by marriage**

So some relations / relatives are **blood relations / relatives**  
while others are **relations / relatives by marriage,**

Even though it can be said that all humans **descend from**  
the same **ancestors,** believed by some to be Adam and Eve,  
people are considered **unrelated** if their **relationship**  
ûnre`leitid  
is rather **remote / distant,** or **is lost in the distance.**

'I **was wondering if / whether** you would do me a favour -  
I **wonder if / whether** you could take me to my home

**30** after the wedding,' one relative asks another.

as he **drapes** his arm **around** the other one's shoulder.

The royal wedding is certainly a **magnificent occasion**  
and to many, it's **the ( social ) event of the year.**

Men and women **in evening dress** may wear a colourful  
**sash** around the waist, and at ceremonial occasions

some wear a **sash draped / draping** from one shoulder

to the opposite hip often as part of a uniform.

\* vente / håbe på at ng. gør ngt.

\* tålmodigt \* - - - at ngt. sker

\* det sidste af ngt.

\* resten af ngt.

\* nært / fjernt > \* beslægtede  
~ i nær / fjern i familie med hinanden

\* slags familiemedlem i forhold til ngt. \* forlover

\*

\* nærtstående ... \* kusine / fætter

\* ( første ) kusine / fætter

\* kusine- / fætterbørn \* ~ fjernere slægtninge

\* brudepige \* i familie

\* ... med

\* slags familiemedlem / slægtning i forhold til ng.

\*

\* enkelt ( men elegant ) > \* klædning, kjole

\* nær ( -stående ) <<

\* fjern ...

\* =

\* familieforhold mellem ng.

\* blodsbeslægtede \* slægtninge \* ~ kødeligt beslægtet

\* beslægtede > \* gennem ægteskab

\* slægtninge \* kødelige ...

\* slægtninge > \* < <

\* nedstamme fra ng.

\* ( fædrene / mødrene ) ophav, aner, forfædre

\* ~ ikke i familie ( med hinanden ) \* slægtsskab

\* fjernt \* ~ fortaber sig i det fjerne

\* tænkte på om - , ~ høflig anmodning om en tjeneste

\* tænker ...

\*

\* ~ lægge ( sin arm ) om ( ngs. skuldre )

\* storslået > \* begivenhed

\* ( selskabelige ) begivenhed ⇔ ( årets )

\* ~ i festtøj / festklædt

\* skærf

\* = \* ~ hængt / hænge løst + prep.

\*

<b>441</b> A wonderful <b>light lies over</b> the landscape	* lys	* ligge / hvile over
<b>stretching to</b> the horizon.	* strække sig til ( horisonten )	
The valley is <b>bathed in</b> the <b>soft warm light</b> of afternoon.	* badet i ngt.	* blødt, varmt lys
The <b>fruitful</b> trees are <b>heavy with ripe</b> fruit.	* frugtbar	* tung af ngt. * moden ( frugt )
The brown palace and the beautiful <b>flower beds</b>	* blomster-	* bed
<b>stretching around</b> the palace lies <b>bathed in sunlight</b> .	* ligge udstrakt ... * badet i ngt. * ... sollys / -skin	
Some smoke starts to <b>issue from</b> a <b>chimney</b> ,	* ( røg ) ~ komme ud fra >	* skorsten
and soon a <b>plume of</b> smoke <b>rises from</b> all the chimneys.	* ( fjerlignende ) søjle af > * røg * stige op fra ngt.	
Some <b>bricks stand out auburn</b> while the <b>joints</b> between	* mursten * fremstå * rødbrun * fuge	
<b>10</b> the bricks stand out <b>light</b> brown.	* lyse-	
The guards wear <b>full dress: full-dress</b> uniforms including	* galla	* ... -
a <b>wide-brimmed</b> hat <b>fitted with</b> a <b>plume</b> on the high <b>crown</b> .	* bredskygget * udstyret med > * fjerbusk * top	* puld
The wedding festivities are a <b>joint effort</b> .	* fælles anstrengelse	
The festivities are organized <b>jointly</b> by the King and Queen,	* i fællesskab	
and the rest of the court.	*	
A beautiful <b>driveway</b> leads up to the palace.	* indkørsel	
All afternoon an <b>armada</b> of carriages <b>crawl along</b> the <b>drive</b> .	* armade * snegle sig afsted langs	* =
The guests are <b>bid good evening</b> and <b>bid welcome</b>	* byde ng. godaften	* ... velkommen
by the <b>Master of Ceremonies</b> and greeted with	* ceremonimester	
<b>20</b> a <b>light snack</b> and a <b>celebratory welcome glass</b> .	* let * mellemmåltid * fejnings * velkomstglas / -drink	
The waiters <b>load</b> glasses and snacks <b>onto</b> a <b>tray</b> ,	* fylde ngt. op på	* ( serverings-) bakke
and walk around offering the guests a drink and a snack.	*	
Bringing a <b>whole load of</b> gifts, bringing <b>loads</b> (pl. E) of gifts,	* en hel bunke	* bunkevis
the guests <b>load</b> the married couple <b>with</b> gifts.	* overdænget med ngt.	
' <b>Never / don't look</b> a <b>gift horse in</b> the <b>mouth</b> ' it's said.	* man skal ikke skue given hest i munden	
The air in the hall is filled with the <b>heavy scent</b> of perfume	* tung duft	
<b>in the wake of</b> the ladies, ( <b>looking</b> ) <b>resplendent</b> in	* i kølvandet på ng.	* strålende
their <b>evening gowns</b> .	* selskabsrobe	pragtfuld
The <b>escutcheon</b> of the royal family hangs in the hall.	* våbenskjold	
<b>30</b> It's a <b>gilded</b> shield on which their <b>coat of arms</b> is depicted.	* forgyldt	* ~ våbenmærke
A <b>coat of arms</b> was originally a <b>surcoat</b> or <b>tabard</b>	* = * våbenfrakke	* våbenkjortel
<b>on</b> which <b>heraldic devices</b> , the <b>arms</b> , were <b>embroidered</b> ,	* < på * heraldisk * påfund * ( være ) broderet <	
and meant to <b>convey</b> a <b>sense of</b> energy and strength.	* ~ heraldik * bibringe >	* fornemmelse af ngt.
Nobody wants a <b>blot on his escutcheon</b> .	* en plet på sin ære	
<b>Heavy-duty</b> carpets <b>cover</b> the floors.	* kraftig	* dække ngt.
An old <b>jointed suit of armour</b> , movable in the <b>joints</b> ,	* ledforsynet * rustning	* led
is <b>on view</b> in a room <b>with</b> a <b>poor natural light</b> .	* på udstilling	* med dårligt naturligt lys
It looks <b>ghoastly</b> in the <b>poor light</b> .	* spøgelsesagtig	* dårligt lys

<b>442</b> The windows of the palace have <b>bars</b> and <b>lights</b> .	* sprosse	* fag
The big windows are <b>divided up into</b> sixteen lights	* dele op i ngt.	
and some windows have <b>leaded lights</b> .	* blyindfattet rude	
<b>Slanting down</b> in <b>bars</b> , the <b>light of the sun streams in</b>	* skråne ned * ( i ) striber	* solens lys * vælde ind
through the <b>sixteen-light</b> windows.	* -fags	
All kinds of <b>bright, shining</b> and <b>glossy</b> objects	* strålende	* & lysende
<b>shine / (o-f) lighten resplendently</b> in the sunshine.	skinnende	* skinnende
In these rooms only <b>colour-fast, heavy-duty</b> cloth	* skinne, blinke	spejlblank
and <b>lightfast</b> colours will do.	reflektere lys	* strålende
	* farveægte	pragfuldt
		* kraftig
	* lysægte	
<b>10</b> Some <b>dark-coloured</b> and <b>gaily coloured</b> materials	* mørkfarvet	* muntert
are <b>bleached</b> by the sun so the colours <b>lighten</b> and get <b>pale</b> .	* ( blive ) bleget	* lysne, falme
If a material <b>bleaches</b> when exposed to sunshine,	* bleges	* bleg, falmet
the sunshine gradually <b>lightens</b> it's colours.	* lysne ( farve ), få ( farve ) til at falme	
<b>Bleach</b> is a chemical used to <b>bleach</b> something.	* blegemiddel	* blege ngt.
It <b>lightens</b> things or makes them white.	* lysne ngt.	
The palace's <b>crown`jewel</b> and <b>crowning glory</b>	* pragtstykke	
is a <b>stunning</b> collection of <b>canvases by</b> famous artists.	* forbløffende ( samling )	* ( oliemaleri på ) lærred
The best canvases hang in <b>good light</b> in the <b>lightest</b> rooms	* i godt lys	( malet ) af ng.
on <b>light pink, light green</b> and <b>light yellow</b> walls.	* lys	* lyseste
<b>20</b> So <b>light`coloured</b> walls <b>lighten</b> these rooms.	* lys	* lyserød
Some pictures <b>deserve mentioning; deserving of</b> attention,	* lyse- ( grøn )	* ... ( gul )
they <b>deserve to</b> hang in rooms with <b>good natural light</b> .	* i lyse farver	* gøre ( rum ) lysere
The <b>comings and goings</b> of people easily <b>stain</b> the carpets	* fortjene at -	* blive nævnt
so the carpets here have a <b>slightly darker</b> colour	* godt	* ~ fortjene
as <b>darker</b> carpets don't easily <b>stain / show stains</b> .	* naturligt	( opmærksomhed )
The pictures <b>depict / represent`portraits,</b>	* kommen og gåen	* lys
landscapes, seascapes, townscapes and <b>still lives</b> .	* anelse	* plette ( gulvtæppe )
The <b>eyes</b> of many men <b>light on</b> the female <b>curves</b>	* mørkere ( tæppe )	* mørkere ( farve )
<b>abundantly adorning</b> the <b>curvy</b> body on a <b>full-length</b> portrait	* mørkere ( tæppe )	* få pletter / blive plettet
<b>30</b> of a <b>lightly</b> or rather <b>scantly dressed / ( litt.) clad vamp</b> .	* afbillede /	* =
Many pictures are <b>loaded with</b> cultural <b>significance</b> .	gengive / vise ngt.	* portræt
<b>Showing</b> a winter landscape, one <b>canvas illustrates</b>	* stilleben	
the cold, <b>harsh light</b> of a winter morning or afternoon.	* ~ ngs. blik	* falde på >
The pictures are painted in <b>dark and light colours</b>	* til overflod	* pryde >
with <b>light</b> and <b>shade</b> and delicate <b>highlights</b> .	* let >	* sparsomt >
The <b>wake</b> of a boat appears incredible realistic.	* fuld af ngt.	* påklædt
A horse-drawn carriage leaves <b>clouds of dust</b> in its <b>wake</b> .	* vise ngt.	* oliemaleri på lærred
The colours look different in different <b>light,</b>	* skarp / skærende >	* belyse /
either in <b>natural</b> or <b>artificial light</b> .	* mørk	~ anskueliggøre >
	* lys	* lys
	* lys	* lys farve
	* lys	* skygge
	* lysvirkning	
	* kølvand	
	* sky	* støv-
	* lys	* =
	* naturligt / kunstigt ...	

443 One of the guests glances at a **skylight**.

Facing the **intense light**, he is **dazzled**.

Having had the **strong light in his eyes**,

he is **blinded** by the **dazzle**.

It's hard / **strenuous** work to **clean** all the **windowpanes**.

A **pane** of glass may accidentally break.

**Lighting** is the arrangement or type of **light** and **lights**

which **lights** a place, making it more or less **light**.

When it's **light outside**, **natural light** and **natural lighting**

**10 will do** in most rooms.

In the many dark **basements** and **cellars** it's only possible

to **orient** /E& **orientate oneself** by **artificial lighting**

**artificial light**.

So people **find / get / take** their **bearings** by

**candlelight** or **lamplight**.

If the **light goes out** it's easy to **lose one's bearings**.

The evening shadows **darken** the rooms.

In the evening, when the setting sun **gilds** the lake,

and the **light** begins to **fade out**, it's **lighting-up time**.

**20 As darkness fades in**, it's time to **light up**.

**Lighted candles** in **candlesticks**, and oil lamps provide

the **lighting**, and give the evening a **sense of occasion**.

Large **candelabra(s) / candelabums** provide

the **brightly lit** rooms with **bright light**.

A candelabra or candelabrum is a **holder / standard**

with several **branches** for holding candles or lamps.

' **Have you got a light ?** E/EA **Do you have a light ?** –

**Could you give me a light ?** ' a servant asks.

They use a **spill** or a **tinderbox** to **light** a candle or a fire.

The tinderbox is **fitted with** a **flint** and **steel** to **strike a light**.

**30** It holds **tinder**, a highly flammable material, which catches

the spark from the flint and **steel** struck together.

Sometimes the tinder, a candle or a fire won't **light**.

If they can't **get** a candle or lamp **to light**, it is replaced.

Steel is various **artificially** produced forms of iron,

having a **carbon content** less than of **pig iron** and higher than

of **wrought iron** and having qualities varying according to

**composition** and heat treatment to make it **tempered steel**.

**Cast iron** is an **alloy** of iron, carbon and other elements.

\* ovenlysvindue

\* rette ansigtet mod / \* skarpt \* lys \* blændet  
have ansigtet rettet mod >  
\* få / have lyset i øjnene

\* gjort blind af > \* blændende lys

\* anstrengende \* ~ pudse > \* vinduesrude / -glas  
( arbejde )  
\* rude

\* belysning \* lys \* lyskilde, lampe

\* oplyse ngt. \* oplyst \* lyst

\* lyst udenfor \* naturlig belysning \* ... lys

\* ~ være nok / tilstrækkeligt

\* kælder / -værelse \* kælderrum norm. u. vinduer

\* orientere sig \* kunstig \* belysning

\* kunstigt \* lys

\* orientere sig

\* levende lys \* lampelys

\* lyset går ud \* miste orienteringen

\* gøre mørkere

\* forgyldte ngt. ( fig.)

\* lys \* svinde \* ~ lygtetændingstid

\* mørket \* tiltage gradvist \* ~ tænde lys

\* tændt \* tælle- / stearinlys \* lysestage

\* belysning \* en til lejlighede passende stemning

\* kandelaber

\* klart \* oplyst ( rum ) \* strålende / klart \* lys

\* holder / stander

\* gren, arm

\* har du ild

\* ku' du gi' mig ild

\* fidibus \* fyrtøj \* tænde ngt.

\* udstyret med > \* flint(e)sten \* stål \* slå ild

\* optændingsmateriale

\* stål

\* tænde, -s  
begynde at brænde  
\* få ngt. til at tænde

\* kunstigt

\* kul (-stof ) \* indhold \* pig- / rå- \* jern

\* smedejern

\* sammensætning \* hærdet stål

\* støbe- \* jern \* legering

<b>444</b> A <b>darkened</b> room, <b>staircase</b> or corridor may <b>be left in</b> ,	* mørkt	* trappe	* være efterladt i / & henligge i >
and <b>lie in complete / impenetrable darkness</b> so the servants	* henligge i >	* komplet / ugennemtrængelig	* mørke
carry a <b>lighted</b> candle or <b>lighted</b> lamp to <b>light</b> their <b>way</b> .	* tændt ( stearinlys )	* ... ( lampe )	* lyse sig vej m. ild
So they take care to <b>put a light</b> to other lamps and candles.	* sætte ild (<giver ) til / ~ tænde ngt.		
In the <b>faint light</b> the servants can just see <b>by the light</b> of	* svagt lys		* ved ngts. lys / skær
the lamp as they start to <b>light</b> the candles in the lamps	* tænde ngt.		
and candelabra, and <b>light a fire</b> in the <b>fireplaces</b> and <b>stoves</b> .	* tænde >	* ild	* i kamin
Having a <b>cheerful blaze going in</b> a fireplaces, a room is	~ tænde op >		* kakkelovn
soon warm and cosy with a fire <b>blazing on</b> the <b>hearth</b> .	* livlig >	* flammen	* få / være på plads
		blussen	// finde sted >
	* flammende		* på kaminbunden
<b>10</b> In some rooms <b>it's pitch`dark</b> so if the lamp <b>goes out</b> ,	* ... bælg mørkt		
they are <b>left in pitch`darkness</b> .	* efterladt		* bælg mørke
It's <b>awkward</b> to <b>find</b> oneself in the <b>pitch dark</b> ,	* ubekvem		* =
and have to <b>find one's way</b> in <b>total darkness</b> .	* finde vej ( i > )		* <<
Several <b>torches light</b> ( ) the court `up.	* fakkell		* oplyse
A <b>flight of stairs / steps</b> leads up to the front door.	* forløb af trappetrin		
The <b>torchlight lights</b> ( ) `up the court and the <b>front steps</b> .	* fakkelskær	* =	* udvendig hovedtrappe
<b>Lit / lighted by</b> several <b>lights</b> mainly large candelabra(s),	* oplyst af >		* lyskilde
the <b>entrance hall</b> , the <b>main stairs</b> or <b>main staircase</b> ,	* forhal	* indvendig hovedtrappe	* =
the <b>assembly hall</b> , <b>ceremonial hall</b> , <b>banqueting hall</b>	* forsamlings- / festsal, aula	* solemnitets-	* gildehal
<b>20</b> and <b>ballroom</b> are <b>well lit</b> .	* balsal		* godt oplyst
<b>Radiating</b> a lot of light, the candelabra <b>light`up</b> all around.	* udstråle / -sende >	* lys	* lyse op
A lot of <b>light radiates from</b> the candelabums (&pl.)	*		
so when all the candles <b>are lit / lighted</b> , they <b>light</b> ( )`up	* være tændt	* lyse ngt. op, ~ oplyse ngt.	
all the rooms, and <b>glint on</b> all the glass and silver.	* ~ lyse glimtende på ngt.		
<b>Glints of</b> the light <b>on shiny</b> objects come from everywhere.	* glimt fra ngt.		* skinnende
<b>Catching</b> the light all the time, mirrors, <b>silverware</b> ,	* fange >	* lyset	* sølvtøj
ladies' <b>jewellery</b> , and the <b>prisms</b> of the <b>chandeliers</b>	* smykker	* prisme	* prismelysekrone
are constantly <b>gleaming</b> and <b>glinting in</b> the <b>light</b> .	* skinne	* glimte i >	* lyset
<b>Lit`up</b> all night, the <b>brightly lit</b> palace is a <b>dazzle</b> .	* oplyst	* strålende	* oplyst
<b>30</b> The halls <b>connect</b> .	* ~ være i direkte forbindelse		* blændende syn ( fig.)
The halls are <b>connected by</b> big beautifully decorated	* forbinde ngt.		
<b>connecting</b> doors <b>gleaming with</b> wax polish	* direkte forbindende		* skinne svagt af ngt.
A <b>dumb waiter</b> , used to lift food, plates etc. from one level	* køkke- / madelevator		
to another <b>connects</b> the kitchen <b>with</b> the banqueting hall.	* forbinde ngt .med ngt.		
As the staff <b>put</b> the kitchen <b>in order</b> late in the evening,	* bringe ngt. i orden		
the kitchen is <b>brightly lit</b> ; it's a room <b>with good light</b> .	* klart / strålende oplyst		* med godt lys
The <b>depositories</b> are <b>poorly</b> or <b>badly lit</b> .	* depot, magasin		
Without a <b>portable light</b> it may be hard to find	opbevaringsrum		
what you are looking for in a room with <b>poor</b> or <b>bad light</b> .	* bærbar lysgiver		
	* ringe / dårlig lys		

**445** That night, **lights** are **ablaze / burning** in all rooms.

There are **lights on** all night.

A lot of candles, lamps, and flames in the **fireplaces**

**give / radiate light** and **heat**.

So a lot of **light** and **heat radiate from** many places.

The **lighted windows** are bright all night, so **lighting up**,  
the palace **lights ( ) up** its surroundings all night.

**Except for rare occasions**, the King **spends lightly**.

Lamps **light** the front door, and **lighten** the stairs.

**10** If the **lighting** is **bad**, and the **light** is **bad**,

the guests may easily **stumble**.

The King and his **consort await** the guests in the hall.

( A queen's husband is called **the prince consort**.)

The King **has** the queen **on his arm**

while they **wait for** the guests.

Arm in arm they **wait for / await** the guests **to** arrive.

Their presence **light ( )** the room **up**.

A **hearty** welcome **awaits** the guests.

They welcome the guests **with open arms**.

**20** Some **dear** guests are **given** a **rapturous welcome**.

Many of the female guests are **lightly clad**,

**having** a handbag **on** their **arm**, or **carrying** it **under** their **arm**.

Having **drenched** themselves **in** perfume,

some guests leave a smell of perfume in their **wake**.

Having **applied powder** and **rouge to excess**,

and **lipstick** in **loud, gaudy** and **garish ( shades of ) red**,

some guests **wear** real **heavy`make-up**.

On top of that, they often wear **garish / gaudy** clothes.

Having **applied quiet lipstick** and **powder** sparingly **to**

**30** their faces, others guests just wear **light** make-up.

The guests **shower / load** the **newly-weds with praise**

and presents, so the **gift table** is **loaded with** gifts.

**Groaning with** gifts, the table **groans under the weight**.

The guests won't **disturb** the gifts.

People may **fall into discrete / separate categories**, e.g.  
di'skri ~t

**on the assumption that** they are either **discreet** or **indiscreet**.  
di'skri~t indi'skri~t

A couple of servants follow in the **wake** of the **royal couple**.

The servants **wait on** the royal family **full-time**,

and **wait on** them **hand and food**.

\* ~ brænder der lys

\* lys tændt

\* ildsted  
kamin

\* give > \* udstråle / sprede > \* lys \* varme

\* = \* = \* stråle ud fra ngt.

\* oplyst \* lyse op

\* oplyse / belyse ngt.

\* bortset fra sjældne tilfælde \* være forsigtig med at >  
give penge ud

\* oplyse ngt.

\* op-, belysning \* dårlig \* lys \* =

\* snuble

\* gemal ( -inde ) \* vente på ng.

\* prinsgemal

\* holdende sig under armen

\* vente på ng.

\* vente på ng. ⇔ at -

\* lyse op i ngt.

\* hjertlig \* vente ng.

\* med åbne arme

\* kær ( gæst ) \* givet > \* begejstret \* velkomst  
henrykt

\* let klædt på

\* have / bære ngt. på armen \* - - - under ...

\* ~ gennemfugte sig > \* i parfume

\* kølvand

\* påføre > \* pudder \* rouge \* i overdreven grad  
~ umådeholdent

\* læbestift \* skrigende \* = \* = \* ( nuance af ) rød

\* have > på \* kraftig \* & sminke  
gå med >

\* spraglet ( tøj ), ~ i skrigende farver

\* påføre > \* ~ diskret \* læbestift \* pudder \* til ngt.

\* lidt

\* overøse / \* nygift \* lovprisning  
belæsse ng. med ngt.

\* gavebord \* være belæsse med /  
bugne af ngt.

\* knage med ( gaver ) \* ... under vægten  
~ være belæsset \* være overlæsset

\* flytte om på ngt.

\* falde i > \* adskilte \* kategorier

\* ~ ud fra den antagelse at - \* diskret \* indiskret  
taktfuld taktløs

\* kølvand \* kongepar

\* betjene / opvarte ng. \* hele arbejdstiden

\* i alle ender og kanter

<b>446 There's loads to do.</b>	* der er en masse, der skal gøres
The wedding <b>markedly adds to</b> the <b>workload</b> ,	* markant * ( for-) øge > * arbejdsbyrde
and especially <b>increases</b> the staff's <b>workload</b> .	* - = -
As the wedding <b>puts</b> an <b>additional / extra load on</b> the staff,	* lægge en ekstra byrde på ng.
the household needs extra <b>domestic `help</b> .	* hjælp i huset
So more staff is hired to <b>cope with</b> the <b>increased workload</b> ,	* klare ngt. * øgede * arbejdsbyrde
and extra staff <b>is taken on</b> in order to <b>spread</b> the <b>load</b> .	* blive ansat * fordele * byrde
More <b>domestics</b> (o-f), more <b>domestic `servants / helps</b> ,	* tjener, der arbejder i huset * =
are hired to do <b>domestic `service / work</b> .	dê mestiks pl: tyende, tjenestefolk * huslig tjeneste
<b>10</b> As there are still <b>lots / masses of</b> work to do,	* masser af ( arbejde )
the staff is <b>struggling</b> to cope with the <b>heavy workload</b> .	* knokle * tung * arbejdsbyrde overvældende
Besides the <b>staff of servants</b> , local <b>waiters</b> and <b>waitresses</b>	* tjenerstab * tjener * servitricer
assist in <b>waiting on</b> the royal family and <b>waiting at table</b> .	* servere for / opvarte ng. * varte op ved > * bord
A lot of people want to <b>be in waiting on</b> the royal	* være i tjeneste
<b>personages</b> so the butler <b>keeps</b> a <b>waiting list</b> ,	/ gøre sin opvartning hos * personage * føre > * venteliste
and <b>put</b> people <b>on</b> the <b>waiting list</b>	* sætte på ...
There is a long <b>wait</b> ; a long <b>wait for full-time</b> employment	* ventetid * ... på ngt. * fuldtids-
The guests <b>wait</b> outside the banqueting hall.	* vente
Come on ! Hurry up ! Quick ! – the guests are <b>waiting</b> ,	* =
<b>20</b> the <b>head waiter</b> urges.	* overtjener
The servants are ready to <b>wait on</b> the guests.	* & servere for ng.
Some nobles expect to <b>be `waited on hand and food</b> .	* & have en tjener på hver finger
The servants <b>wait at `table</b> .	* varte op ( ved bordet )
So if a guest is <b>waiting to</b> be served	* vente på at -
he won't have to be <b>waiting long</b> .	* vente længe
There are <b>loads to</b> eat.	* masser at -
If a guest is <b>waiting for</b> a servant, and reacts <b>impatiently</b> ,	* vente på ng. * utålmodigt
the servants are instructed to <b>politely request</b> ,	* høflig * anmode
' <b>Wait your turn</b> , please ! – <b>Wait a little / a moment</b> , please !	* vent til det bliver din tur * vent lidt / et øjeblik
<b>30</b> – <b>Wait until / till</b> I come back, please !	* vent til ...
<b>Everything comes to him who waits</b> .	* ~ kan du vente kan du blive konge af Sverige
<b>Burdened with</b> heavy bowls, dishes, and trays, carrying	* bebyrdet af ngt.
a napkin <b>over</b> their <b>arm</b> , the waiters serve around the table.	* over armen
Liquids easily <b>spill</b> so they take care not to <b>spill</b> anything,	* spildes / flyde over * spilde ngt.
especially not to <b>spill</b> it down / on / over a guest.	* ... adv.
The banquet includes both <b>light courses</b>	* let * ret ( af flere )
and <b>heavy</b> courses <b>loaded with calories</b> ( sg: a <b>calorie</b> ).	kaloriefattig * tung * fuld af ngt. * kalorie -rig
Fish and meat are served on a <b>bed</b> of vegetables.	* leje, bund
The guests are requested to <b>do justice to the dishes</b> .	underlag * ~ tage for sig af retterne

**447** They have a **light** white wine with the fish,  
and a **rich** red wine with the meat courses.

Some guests prefer a **heavy** dessert like a **heavy** cake

**loaded with** butter and sugar.

A **pastry** may be made using **light pastry**.

Some guests **prefer** a dessert **to be light** and refreshing.

Some of the guests are **heavyweights**

who **help** themselves **to the dishes**.

**Eating heavily** and **drinking heavily**,

**10** these **heavy eaters** and **heavy drinkers**

**load** their stomach **with** food drink seemingly unaware of  
the fatal effects of **heavy eating** and **heavy drinking**.

**Ordinarily** the King is a **light eater** and a **light drinker**

who, just like the queen, only **eats lightly** and **drinks lightly**.

They don't eat too much **heavy** or **greasy** food.

On rare occasions, though, they enjoy **falling to the dishes**.

The kitchen is **fitted out with** equipment for **preparing**  
and **cooking** both **light meals** and **big** and **heavy meals**,  
and occasionally **big** and **heavy dinners**.

**20** So the kitchen has a lot of **heavy-duty** equipment.

The kitchen has both **light** and **heavy kitchenware**:

**light** and **heavy kitchen** and **cooking utensils**

such as **light** and **heavy pots** and **pans** as well as

**cookbooks** /E& **cooking books**, and **recipe books**.

The **chef**, the **chef de cuisine**, the **head of the kitchen**,  
the **head cook**, could do most of his work **in his sleep**.

The butcher has **jointed** the **meat**; he has cut the meat into  
pieces of **beef**, **veal**, **pork**, **mutton**, **chicken** etc.

In Britain a **joint of** beef, veal, ect. is a large piece of meat  
**30** or **roast**, usually containing a bone.

**Heavy E/A double cream** is used to make a dish **heavy**.

Once the delivery of **salmon** was several pounds **light**.

As it gets **oppressively hot** in the kitchen,

all the **steam** and **vapour** from the cooking

**mist** ( ) **up / cloud** (up) the windows.

The windows **cloud** (up) **with steam / moisture / mist**  
as they **mist up / over with condensation**.

To **wipe moist** surfaces like the **steamy / misted** windows,  
they use a cloth able to **absorb / retain moisture**.

\* let ( i smagen ) ( vin )

\* fyldig / kraftig ...

\* tung og kalorierig ( dessert / kage )

\* fuld af / proppet med ngt.

\* butterdejskage \* luftigt \* butterdej

\* foretrække ngt. ↔ at - \* ~ let og kaloriefattig

\* sværvægter

tyksak

\* ~ tage for sig af retterne

\* spise / drikke meget

\* en som spiser / drikker meget

\* fylde /

prope ngt. med

\* voldsom æderi

\* ... druk

\* normalt

til daglig

\* spise lidt / let

\* en som ikke spiser / drikker ret mege

\* drikke ...

\* tung

\* fedtholdig

\* tage for sig af retterne

\* indrette med ngt.

\* tilberede >

\* tilberede ved varme

\* let

\* solid måltid

\* ... middag

\* robust, solidt

\* let

\* tung, svær

\* køkkenudstyr

\* =

\* =

\* køkkeredskab

\* =

\* =

\* gryde

\* pande

\* kogebog

\* opskrift-

\* bog

\* køkkenchef

\* =

\* i søvne

\* udskære / tranchere >

\* kød

\* oksekød \* kalvekød \* svinekød \* lammekød \* kylling

\* steg af ...

\* ( stegt ) steg

\* ~ piskefløde ( 36 % )

\* fyldig, ~ kalorierig

\* laks ( U = pl. )

\* i undervægt

\* trykkende >

\* varmt

\* vanddamp efter kogning

\* em ( synlig masse af væskedråber )

\* tildugge ngt.

\* dugge til med > \* damp, em \* fugt \* dug ( på rude )

\* dugge til med >

\* kondens ( -vand )

\* tørre >

\* fugtig

\* overflade

\* dugget ( rude )

\* opsuge / tilbageholde >

\* fugt

<b>448</b> Making <b>omelettes</b> /A& <b>omelets</b> and <b>scrampled eggs</b> ,	* omelet, æggekage	* & røræg
a cook <b>breaks eggs into</b> a bowl, and, using a <b>fork</b> or a <b>whisk</b> ,	* ~ slå æg op	* i ngt. * gaffel * piskeris
he <b>beats</b> the <b>eggs</b> as he <b>beats yolk</b> and <b>white together</b> .	* piske >	* blomme * hvide * sammen
<b>You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.</b>	* man kan ikke lave æggekage uden at slå æg i stykker ( ~ hvor er handles, der spildes )	
<b>Breaking eggs</b> and separating the <b>whites</b> from the <b>yolks</b> ,	* ~ slå æg op	* hviderne * blommerne
another cook <b>beats</b> the <b>yolks together with</b> sugar.	* piske >	* blomme * sammen med ( sukker )
<b>Beating in</b> the sugar, he <b>beats (up)</b> the <b>paste</b> until <b>frothy</b> .	* piske i ⇔ ngt. * ... > * massen ( op )	* skummende
Then he <b>whisks</b> the <b>egg whites</b> to a <b>stiff consistency</b>	* piske >	* ægge- * hvide * stiv * konsistens tilstandsform
before he <b>mixes</b> the yolk paste and the stiff white ( <b>together</b> )	* blande ngt. og ngt. ( sammen )	
so the <b>mixture of</b> paste and white is still <b>light</b> and <b>fluffy</b> .	* blanding af ngt. og ngt.	* let * luftig
<b>10</b> ( Today we use ( egg ) <b>beaters</b> and <b>electric whisks</b> . )	* piskeris / hjulpisker	* ~ elpisker
The cooks have <b>soaked dried fruit</b> in <b>cream sherry</b> .	* ~ iblødsætte >	* tørret * frugt * ~ dessert / * = sød
Dried <b>apricots</b> have been <b>soaking</b> overnight.	* abrikos	* ~ ( have ) trukket / ( været ) i blød
A clean <b>spoon</b> is used to <b>spoon</b> the abricots <b>onto</b> a plate,	* ske	* håndtere ngt. med ske * over på ngt.
and then to spoon a <b>spoon</b> ( <b>&lt;ful</b> ) of <b>topping</b> onto the abricots.	* skefulde af ngt.	* toppingrediens
The cooks use <b>lightly</b> or <b>richly greased</b> pans.	* let	* rigeligt * ~ smurt
Sometimes they <b>spoon melted grease over</b> the food.	* håndtere med ske >	* smeltet * fedt * over ngt.
They take care not to <b>be</b> too <b>heavy-handed</b> with the salt,	* overdreven i brug af ngt.	
and when they <b>spice</b> ( ) <b>up</b> ) the food with a strong spice	* krydre ngt. ( med ngt.)	
like pepper, they take care not to <b>go</b> too <b>heavy on</b> the spice.	* bruge meget af ngt.	
<b>20</b> Flies like to <b>alight on</b> foods so the cooks <b>cover</b> ( ) <b>up</b>	* lande på ngt.	* tildække ngt.
much foodstuff to prevent the flies from <b>lighting on</b> the foods.	* =	
The cooks cook vegetable and meat <b>stock(s)</b> .	* fond ( -er )	
It's said that <b>too many cooks spoil the broth</b> ,	* ~ mange kokke fordærver maden ( tyk suppe )	
but as <b>many hands make light`work</b> , plenty of waiters	* ~mange hænder gør arbejdet let	
provide a relaxed atmosphere in the <b>banquet room</b> .	* fest- ( middag-)	* ~ sal
The festive atmosphere has a <b>benign</b> influence upon	* gunstig	
the spirits of all the guests even upon those of them who	*	
used to feel <b>clumsy</b> , shy and awkward at parties.	* klodset, kluntet	
Smiling <b>benignly</b> , exchanging <b>benevolent</b> looks and smiles,	* venligt og imødekommende	* venlig og ...
<b>30</b> the guests seem to enjoy each other's company	*	
<b>in benign amusement</b> .	* i >	* venligsindet * munterhed
When a <b>clumsy</b> guest spills his wine, he makes	* klodset, kluntet ( person )	
no <b>clumsy</b> attempt to excuse his <b>clumsiness</b> but says,	* ... ( forsøg )	
' Sorry - that was <b>clumsy of</b> me, ' when a waiter quickly	* ... af ng.	
uses a dry cloth to <b>soak</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the wine.	* suge / tørre ngt. op	
<b>Butterfingers, butter-fingered</b> or <b>cack-handed</b> people,	* fummelfinger	* fummelfingret * ... ( person )
are <b>clumsy</b> as their <b>clumsy</b> fingers can't do what they should.	* klodset, kluntet	* ... ( fingre )

449 Usually a man <b>takes</b> another man's wife <b>into dinner</b> .	* ~ få / have ng. til borddame
and a woman <b>takes</b> another woman's husband <b>into dinner</b> .	* ... bordherre
<b>Singles</b> (pl.) <b>sit next to</b> singles <b>at dinner</b> .	* enlige * & være ngs. ...
A discussion <b>gets</b> a little <b>heavy</b> .	* blive tung ( alvorlig / svær at forstå / kedelig )
So the ( <b>dinner</b> ) <b>partner</b> finds the discussion <b>heavy`going</b> .	* bordherre / -dame * tung / svær at følge
The <b>neighbour at dinner</b> <b>forgets herself</b> .	* = * forløbe sig
<b>Letting</b> herself <b>being carried away</b> , she <b>sighs deeply</b>	* = * dybt ( af kedsomhed )
<b>Rolling</b> her <b>eyes</b> ( <b>upwards</b> ), she answers <b>heavily</b> .	* rulle med øjnene * sløvt, trevent
She <b>has alternate feelings of boredom</b> and irritation.	* have skiftede følelser af ngt. og ngt. * kedsomhed
<b>10</b> Her mood <b>alternates between</b> boredom and irritation.	* skifte mellem ngt. og ngt.
Her <b>eyes roll</b> , and her voice is <b>heavily laced with irony</b> .	* ngs. øjne ruller * voldsomt præget af ngt.
There is a <b>loaded`silence</b> .	* trykkende ...
<b>Time hangs / lies`heavy on</b> her <b>hands</b> .	* føle tiden lang kede sig
She <b>laces</b> her <b>fingers together out of sheer boredom</b>	* flette sine fingre * af bar / ren og skær * kedsomhed
as she considers her partner a <b>jerk</b> .	* fjols
The conversation is succeeded by a <b>heavy`silence</b> ,	* ~ pinlig tavshed
and only <b>reluctantly taken up again in</b> a <b>heavy`atmosphere</b> .	* = * i > * ~ en trykket stemning
<b>Time</b> still <b>lies heavy on</b> her <b>hands</b> .	* <<
Once in a while he is <b>waiting for</b> her <b>to</b> say something	* vente på at ng. ...
<b>20</b> as he <b>expects</b> her <b>to</b> comment on his <b>small talk</b> .	* forvente at ng. ... * ligegyldig snak
His boring talk nearly <b>sends</b> her <b>to sleep</b> .	* få ng. til at falde i søvn
She's <b>bored witless</b> and has to <b>exert herself</b> not to	* kedet til døde * anstrenge sig
<b>yawn sleepily / drowsily</b> .	* gabe * søvngigt
The <b>consumption</b> of wine and coffee <b>laced with</b> brandy	* indtagelse * spædet op med
eventually seems to <b>lighten</b> their <b>moods</b>	* løfte ngt. humør
and <b>lighten</b> their <b>conversation</b> .	* lette samtalen
Water <b>clouds</b> some <b>clear spirits</b> (E).	* grumse ngt. * klar * spirituøs drik gøre ngt. uklart
Some clear <b>liquors</b> (A) <b>cloud</b> when water is added.	* = * blive ...
So some alcoholic drinks are clear and some are <b>cloudy</b> .	* uklar grumset
<b>30</b> The <b>gentleman sitting next to</b> the <b>lady venture</b> ( <b>to tell</b> )	* ~ damens bordherre * driste sig til ( at - ) ngt.
a <b>hopefully hilarious</b> story to <b>lighten</b> the <b>atmosphere</b> .	* antagelig * vanvittig morsom * lette stemningen
' Please don't <b>stand on ceremony</b> (E),' the lady requests.	* ~ ikke være formel
Apparently he has <b>lightened</b> the atmosphere	* =
and <b>broken the ice</b> by telling the story as her <b>eyes light up</b>	* bryde isen * øjne > * lyse op >
and her <b>shoulders heave with slightly appreciative laughter</b> .	* skuldre * bevæge sig * let * anerkendende * latter op og ned af >
Their mood <b>lightens</b> , the conversation <b>lightens</b> ,	* lette / stige * lettes
and the whole <b>atmosphere lightens</b> .	* stemning > * løfte sig
At a time, they just sit <b>soaking</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the atmosphere	* ~ indsuge / lade sig gennemstrømme af ( atmosfæren )
as the <b>flame</b> of a candle <b>wavers</b> and goes out.	* flamme * flakke

<b>450</b> The <b>groom's speech</b> is full of <b>wit</b> and wisdom.	* gommens * tale * vid, ~ viden og humor
The <b>groom speech</b> begins with a few serious subjects,	* ~ brudgomstale
but gradually it becomes <b>lighter in tone</b> .	* lettere i tonen
Written with <b>delicate light and shade</b> , the King's	* fine > * ~ nuancer
<b>wedding speech reflects</b> his <b>reputation</b> for <b>plain speaking</b> .	* bryllups- * tale * afspejle > * ry for > * ~ klart * tale forståelig
Keeping her <b>tone light</b> , the Queen <b>narrates</b> both	* holde sig til et let tonefald * berette / fortælle om ngt.
the <b>serious</b> and the <b>lighter sides</b> of life at the court.	* & alvorligere * & oplivende * sider ( af livet )
She's a <b>witty</b> speaker, and <b>relating</b> the <b>lighter moments</b>	* kvik og vittig * fortælle / berette om ngt. * lysere ...
of her life, her dry <b>wit has</b> everybody laughing.	* vid og humor * få ng. til at -
<b>10</b> At times the Queen <b>has</b> the guests <b>rolling in the aisles</b> .	* få ng. til at > * rulle > * i gangene ~ være ved at falde om af grin
Her <b>light-`hearted</b> speech, <b>laced with punchlines</b> ,	* munter * iblandet / spækket med > * sætning med pointe
and <b>spiced ( up ) with witty asides receives loud applause</b> .	* krydret * kvik * side- * modtage / * højt * bifald med > bemærkning få >
<b>Leading ( ) `off</b> the music programme, a <b>famous, noted</b>	* indlede ngt. * berømt * =
<b>renowned</b> , and <b>celebrated piano player leads `off</b> .	* berømt * fejret * klaver- * spiller * indlede
<small>rì naund</small> The programme <b>includes</b> both <b>serious</b> and <b>light</b> music.	* indbefatte / byde på ngt. * alvorlig * let
Playing the piano <b>with effortless artistry</b> , the pianist plays	* spille > * klaver * ubesværet * kunstnerisk dygtighed
<b>with consummate</b> (attr.) <b>skill</b> and <b>brehtaking virtuosity</b> .	* fuldendt * dygtighed * betagende * virtuositet
<small>kên` sùmêt / `kânsêmêt vê~t\$u` âsiti</small>	* berømt som ngt.
<b>Famous / noted / renowned as</b> a pianist,	* ... for ngt. * kunstnerisk dygtighed
he is <b>famous / noted / renowned for</b> his <b>artistry</b> ,	* vekslende * anslag * lethed * forsigtighed * i anslaget
<b>20</b> and <b>alternating touch: lightness</b> and <b>gentleness of touch</b>	* afveksle med ngt. * kraftfuldhed * fasthed
<b>alternating with heaviness</b> and <b>firmness</b> of touch.	* skifte mellem ngt. og ngt. * fremragende
<b>Alternating</b> a light and a heavy touch with <b>eminent</b> skill,	* virtuos * berømmelse * mestre kunsten at -
the <b>virtuoso</b> pianist of great <b>renown masters the art</b> of	* ubesværet * lade ngt. afveksle med ngt. skifte mellem ngt. og ngt.
<small>vê~t\$u` êusêu</small> <b>effortlessly alternating</b> a delicate touch <b>with</b> a firm touch.	* rørende * ~ få tårer i øjnene
<b>Touching</b> music makes some people's <b>eyes mist over</b> .	* komponist
In spite of the fact that he is a famous <b>composer</b>	* klaver- * virtuos * anstændig retskaffen
and a <b>piano virtuoso</b> , the pianist is a wise and <b>virtuous</b> man	* =
<small>`vê~t\$uês</small> who lives an entirely <b>virtuous</b> life.	* kunne > * fuldendt
Even if the pianist <b>could</b> play the music <b>consummately</b>	* gøre ngt. i søvne * selvretfærdig
<small>kân` sùmitli</small> <b>30</b> in his <b>sleep</b> , he never feels <b>virtuous</b> because of his skills.	* vente ventetid
There is a few minutes <b>wait</b> between the acts.	* virtuos * få ng. til at - * bifalde
His <b>virtuoso</b> performance <b>has</b> his audience <b>applauding</b>	* højt * tordnende bragende * henrykt vildt begejstret
<b>loudly / thunderously / rapturously</b> .	* fuldendt
The <b>consummate</b> performer, composer and virtuoso	* skødesløst uden vægtig grund
gets an award which is not given <b>lightly</b> .	* fuldbyrde ngt.
The royal performance <b>consummates</b> his career,	* fuldbyrdelse af ngt. * livs- * værk
<small>`kânsêmeit</small> and the award is the <b>consummation</b> of his <b>life's work</b> .	* vinde > * berømmelse som ngt. * alsidig * musiker
Having <b>won renown as</b> a <b>versatile musician</b> ,	* modtage / få > * let / spredt * bifald
<small>rì` naun</small> he doesn't remember to have ever <b>received light applause</b> .	

<b>451</b> Even if the room is <b>brightly lit</b> , one of the musicians	* klart >	* oplyst
<b>reads the notes in bad light.</b>	* læse >	* node * i dårligt lys
Realizing he is <b>standing in his own light</b> , he moves	* skygge for sig selv	
<b>into the light</b> , and <b>brings</b> his notes <b>into the light</b> so he can	* flytte sig ind i ...	* bringe ngt. ...
<b>see the head, stem and hook / pennant</b> of the notes <b>clearly.</b>	* se > * hoved * stilk * krog / flag * klart, tydeligt ~ hals ~ fane	
Somebody is <b>standing in</b> another one's <b>light.</b>	* stå i ngs. lys, ~ tage lyset fra ng.	
So he asks politely, ' Could you move a little to the left –	*	
you <b>are ( standing ) in my light.</b> '	* ~ tage lyset fra ng.	
Playing the music with <b>delicate light and shade</b> ,	* fine >	* ~ nuancer
<b>10</b> the <b>orchestra</b> wins <b>thunderous</b> applause.	* orkester	* tordende
The audience applaud <b>thunderously.</b>	* bragende	
<b>A lightning artist wins loud applause.</b>	* lyn- / hurtigtegner	* få kraftig bifald
Later in the evening there is a <b>light</b> dance.	* uhøjtidelig	
<b>Joining in</b> the dance and <b>joining in</b> the fun,	* slutte sig til ngt.	
the guests <b>join hands</b> and dance round and round.	* tage hinanden i hænderne	
Everytime dancers <b>step out with fatigue</b> , others <b>join in.</b>	* træde ud * af træthed * give sig til at være med fê`ti-g	
The <b>indefatigable</b> queen <b>treads</b> , walks and dances <b>lightly.</b>	* utrættelig * træde * let, forsigtigt, skødesløst adræt, elegant	
She likes best <b>light</b> music, <b>light opera</b> and <b>light comedy.</b>	* let * operette * lystspil	
She never answers <b>lightly</b> , though.	* skødesløst ligegyldigt	
<b>20</b> The servants had been told to <b>leave the light on</b> ,	* lade lyset brænde	
and <b>leave the light burning</b> the whole night <b>if required.</b>	* =	* hvis / om påkrævet
Usually they just <b>leave a light on</b> in the kitchen.	* efterlade >	* et lys tændt & lade et lys brænde
Many of the guests are <b>indefatigable</b>	* utrættelig	
so the rest of the party <b>go on ( partying ) indefatigably</b>	* fortsætte ( * med at feste )	* utrætteligt
while the newly married couple retire.	*	
<b>Clearing the tables</b> , and <b>keeping the lights on</b> all night,	* ~ rydde af > * bordene * ~ lade lysene brænde	
the servants <b>clear up after</b> the guests.	* rydde op efter ng.	
The whole area is <b>lit up</b> by the palace.	* oplyse ngt.	
Only a few guests are invited to <b>sleep over</b> so all night	* overnatte	
<b>30</b> there are vehicles <b>waiting for</b> the rest of the guests.	* vente på ng.	
Having been <b>waiting with</b> their carriags and coaches	* ... med ngt.	
to bring the guests home, the <b>coachmen crack</b> their <b>whips</b>	* kusk * knalde / smælde ( med ) >	* pisk
<b>one after another / the other</b> , to make the horses start pulling.	* en efter en / den ene efter den anden	
The <b>dew</b> may <b>fall</b> during the night, and in the mornig,	* duggen >	* falder
the <b>dewy</b> landscape may be <b>shrouded in mist.</b>	* dugget * hyldet i >	* dis
<b>Dewdrops glint / sparkle in</b> the morning sunlight,	* dugdråbe	* glimte + adv.
and, as the sun rises, early morning <b>mist patches clear.</b>	* dis * flage * gå i opløsning ~ flager af dis	
As the sun <b>glints on</b> the <b>dewy</b> grass, <b>glints</b> of silver	* glimte på ngt. * dugget dugvåd	* glimt af ngt.
reflect from the grass <b>wet with dew.</b>	* våd af dug	

<b>452</b> Not until the <b>first light</b> appears, and <b>gleam on</b>	* første morgenlys	* give genskin på ngt.
the windows of the palace, the servants <b>put out the light</b> .	* slukke >	* lyset
They must remember to <b>put all the lights out</b> ,	* ... lysene	
and check that all the <b>lights are out</b> .	* lys (-ene ) er slukket	
Some <b>lights go out</b> by themselves.	* ... gå ud	
As the morning sun <b>glints on</b> the open windows,	* glimte på ngt.	
and the windows <b>glint in</b> the sun (<light ), the servants	* glimte i ngt.	
<b>fasten</b> the windows <b>surely</b> so that they do not <b>blow open</b> .	* lukke ngt.	* forsvarligt * blæse op
If a window won't <b>fasten</b> , it must be repaired.	* fæstne	
<b>10</b> It may need new <b>fasteners / fastenings</b> .	* lukkemekanisme	
A pair of <b>shutters</b> are <b>fastened</b> in front of a window	* skodde	* ( blive ) fæstnet
to keep out the light, and <b>fastened back</b> later on.	* ( blive ) fastgjort tilbage	
Some servants <b>sleep`in</b> while others <b>sleep`out</b> .	* have sovekvarter der på stedet	* ... andetsteds
The servants <b>keep</b> breakfast <b>waiting for</b> the guest	* holde ngt. parat	
who <b>stayed over`night / stayed the night / stayed over</b> .	* overnatte	
Though the palace only <b>sleeps</b> 50 guests,	* kunne have ng. sovende	
they manage to <b>bed down</b> 20 more guests.	* give ng. sengeleje	
<b>Later in the morning or later in the day</b> , some guests	* senere om morgenen	* & op ad dagen
who <b>slept`in, slept`late or over`slept</b> just have something	~ om formiddagen	
<b>20 light for</b> breakfast before they leave.	* sove længe * =	* ... over sig
'Are you <b>nearly ready</b> to leave ? ' a guest asks his wife.	*	
'I'm ready when you are,' she answers.	* ~ ved at være parat	
Waking up <b>with a hangover, having</b> a terrible <b>hangover</b> ,	* med tømmermænd	* have ...
one of the guests <b>stays in bed</b> all day.	* blive >	* i sengen
Looking forward to going home to <b>go</b> and <b>soak in the bath</b> ,	* ~ gå i bad og lade sig gennembløde	
he'll have a long <b>soak</b> .	* gennemblødning	
The <b>launderers or washers</b> ( mostly <b>laundresses</b>	* vaskeperson * =	* vaskekone
or <b>washerwomen</b> ) bring all the <b>laundry to the laundry room</b>	* = * vasketøj	* vaskerum
where they <b>do the laundry / launder the clothes</b> .	* ~ gøre tøjvaskearbejdet * ~ vaske og klargøre tøjet	
<b>30</b> They <b>soak</b> the laundry / E& <b>washing</b> before they wash it	* ~ iblødsætte ngt.	* vasketøj
They <b>give</b> the laundry a <b>good soak</b> .	* give ngt. >	* en god gennemvædning
They <b>leave</b> it to <b>soak</b> in water with <b>washing soda</b> for hours	* ~ lade ngt. >	* gennemblødes * vaske- * soda
to allow the soda to <b>soak</b> ( ) <b>off</b> dirt and filth.	* udbløde ngt.	
After washing, when the laundry has <b>dried</b>	* ( vasketøj ) tørre	
and been <b>folded</b> (up), there's a <b>pile of ironing</b> to be done.	* ~ lægge ngt. sammen * stabel af >	* tøj til strygning
Using an <b>iron</b> , they start <b>doing the ironing</b> .	* strygejern * klare >	* strygning
Busy <b>ironing</b> , busy <b>ironing</b> all the laundry,	* stryge	* ... ngt.
they have to <b>iron</b> ( ) <b>out</b> all <b>creases</b> .	* ~ bortstryge ngt.	* fold

**453 The newly married couple sleep through.**

**Sleeping through** all kinds of **disturbance(s)**,  
they manage to **sleep through** the morning

Waking up **late in the morning without hangovers**,  
they have **slept right through** till lunchtime.

The Queen never thought of **wiping** ( ) **off** her make-up.

Even if tears of joy have **smudged** the queen's mascara,  
and her lipstick has **smudged**, the King finds her so attractive  
that he **showers** her **with** kisses.

**10** Instead of **breakfast** and **lunch** the newly-weds have  
**brunch in bed**.

They **jerk / pull at** the **servant's bell** and **wait**.

The kitchen staff has been **waiting for** the **bellpull to** ring.

After a while there is a **light tap at / on** the door.

The **waiting-maid** (o-f) must **knock** before she **enters**.

She **taps lightly / gently at / on** the **door**.

The King and Queen **miss** the tapping.

There is then a loud **knock at / on** the door,  
and after a **suitable time** there's a **sharp rap at / on** the door

**20** as she first **knocks** then **raps at / on** the door.

Having been allowed to come in, she **jerks** the door **open**  
and comes into the room carrying a **loaded tray**.

The tray is **loaded with all that the heart could desire**.

They have a **big** brunch.

They **smear** butter **on** the bread.

Having **smear**<sup>smiê</sup>ed the bread **with** butter,

they **smear strawberry jam over** the butter.

Jam is stored in a jam **jar** of **earthenware** ( or glass ).

They can have tea and coffee with **coffee cream** EA /

**30** **single** E/A **light cream**, or **double cream**.

Tea and coffee are stored in **tea** and **coffee jars**,  
or in tea and coffee **canisters** ( E& a ( tea ) **caddy** ).

A **teapot** and a **coffee pot** each with a **handle**, a **spout**,  
and a **lid** are used for making and serving tea and coffee,

A **tea strainer** and a **coffee filter bag** are used to separate  
the **tea leaves** and the **coffee grounds** from the extract.

Coffee is **poison** to some people.

* nygifte			* sove igennem
* sove fra ngt.			* forstyrrelse(r)
* ... hele vejen gennem			
* & om formiddagen			* uden tæmmermænd
* sove igennem lige til			
* tørre ( make-up ) af			
* udtvære ngt.			
* blive tværet ud			
* overøse ng. med ngt.			
* morgenmad			* frokost
* frokost og morgenmad samtidig			* i sengen
* trække i ngt.	* klokkestreng		* vente
* vente på ngt. at -			* klokkestreng
* let			* bank på
* kammerpige	* banke på	* træde / komme ind	
* banke	* let	* på døren	
* overhøre ngt.			
* bank på ngt.			
* passende	* tidsrum	* hårdt	* bank (- en ) på ngt.
* banke på ( døren )		* ... gentagende gange	
* ~ pufte ( døren ) op			
* fyldt			* bakke
* belæsset med ngt.		* alt hvad hjertet kan begære	
* stor			
* smøre / tvære ngt. ud på ngt.			
* smøre ngt. med ngt.			
* ... ngt. >	* jordbær	* syltetøj marmelade	* over ngt.
* krukke			* lertøj
* kaffefløde			
* =			* ~ piskefløde
* te- / kaffe-			* krukke
* dåse			
* tepotte	* kaffekande	* håndtag	* tud
* låg			
* tesi	* kaffe	* filter ~ kaffepose	* pose
* te- * blade		* kaffe-	* ~grums
* den rene gift			

<b>454</b> The King and Queen <b>relate</b> the <b>events</b> of the <b>day before</b> .	* berette / sammenholde ngt.	* begivenhed	* fra dagen før ~ gårsdagens
Their minds <b>are loaded with</b> memories / <b>recollections</b> .	* fuld af >		* erindringer minder
Their memory is <b>burdened by</b> a <b>hotchpotch</b> eE/A	* tyngtet / belastet af ngt.	* sammensurium af ngt.	
<b>burdened with</b> a <b>hodgepotch</b> of events.	* =		
No matter the <b>jumble</b> of events makes their <b>brain reel</b> ,	* sammensurium	* det til at køre rundt i hovedet	
and the <b>ragbag</b> (E) of memories makes their <b>head swim</b> ,	* =		* =
the <b>chief events</b> of the <b>eventful</b> wedding <b>stand out</b> clearly.	* hovedbegivenhed	* begivenhedsrig	* skille sig ud
They talk about the <b>highlights</b> of <b>yesterday's events</b> ;	* højdepunkt		* gårsdagens ...
the <b>highlights</b> of the speeches and the entertainment.	* =		
<b>10</b> They are pleased by the <b>burden</b> of most speeches.	* hovedvægten, grundtanken		
They don't <b>burden, encumber</b> or <b>trouble</b> their <b>minds</b>	* bebyrde >	* =	* besvære >
<b>with flatteries</b> as they let <b>insincere</b> praise	* med >	* tomme smigrende bemærkninger	* uærlig
<b>go in ( through / at ) one ear and out (of / at) the other.</b>	* gå ind ad det ene øre og ud ad det andet		
A few events <b>are</b> just a <b>blur</b> , contrary to the <b>wedding night</b>	* være >	* uklar masse	* bryllupsnatten
which they eagerly <b>highlight</b> as the <b>event of the day</b> .	* kaste lys på / fremhæve ngt.	* dagens højdepunkt	
Having <b>lit</b> the <b>wick</b> , the King had <b>lit</b> a <b>lamp</b> .	* tænde >	* væge	* = >
The wick had <b>lit</b> at once, and when the lamp <b>lit up</b> ,	* tænde		* lyse op
the King helped her (to) <b>unfasten</b> her dress.	* lukke ngt. op		
He <b>lit</b> her to bed with <b>light footsteps</b>	* løsnede / løsgøre ngt.		
<b>20</b> holding the lamp <b>at arm's length</b> .	* lyse ng. vej til ngt.		* lette trin
Everything looked grey in the <b>dim light</b> of the flame / lamp.	* ud i strakt arm		
' <b>Come to my arms</b> , ' the Queen whispered.	* svagt lys		
He didn't <b>keep</b> her <b>waiting</b> in bed.	* dunkel skær		
The King <b>smear</b> ed <b>scented</b> oil <b>on</b> his hands,	* kom i mine arme		
and <b>smear</b> ed the <b>fragrant</b> oil all <b>over</b> her <b>expectant</b> body.	* lade ng. vente		
As he <b>smear</b> ed the Queen <b>with</b> the oil, the air became	* smøre ngt. på ngt.		* parfumeret
fragrant with <b>scents</b> from the oil.	* ... ud over	* velduftende	* forventningsfuld
<b>Having</b> the <b>requisite of / for</b> tact, and <b>having a light hand</b> ,	* indsmøre ngt. med ngt.		
the King had <b>consummated</b> the marriage	* velduft		
<b>30</b> with <b>consummate</b> tact and <b>light movements</b> .	* have * fornødent element af / * ~ være let på hånden		
Talking <b>in whispers</b> , they <b>had no secrets</b> from each other.	grundlag for ngt.	behændig, taktfuld	
In bed, there are no <b>dark secrets</b> between them,	* fuldbyrde ngt.		
and between them a promise will never be broken <b>lightly</b> .	* fuldendt	* finfølelse	* let / forsigtig
<b>Smear</b> ed with oil, their bodies had <b>touched lightly</b> ,	* tale >	* ~ med hviskende stemmer	* have hemmeligheder for ng.
and soon their <b>secret parts</b> had <b>joined in love</b> .	* dyster / skummel ...		
With <b>requisite</b> tact, he had <b>fulfilled</b> her <b>lightest wish</b> .	* ~ uden videre / tankeløst		
Having <b>used</b> () <b>up the last</b> of their energy,	* indsmurt i ngt.	* berøre hinanden	* let forsigtigt
they <b>had</b> both been <b>on cloud`nine</b> .	* kønsdele	* forene sig / -s	* i kærlighed
	* fornøden ( takt )	* opfyld >	* mindste ønske
	* opbrugt >	* det sidste af ( deres energi ) ~ ders sidste ( ... )	
	* være >	* ~ i den syvende himmel	

<b>455</b> A <b>tiresome</b> and <b>tiring clean(-)up</b> awaits the servants.	* besværlig	* trættende	* oprydning rengøring	* vente ng.
The whole palace is ( <b>in</b> ) a <b>mess</b> ; all the rooms are <b>untidy</b> .	* roderi ( det roder i ...)			* rodet
The <b>Lord Chamberlain of the Household</b> has the <b>task of</b>	* hofmarchal		* have til opgave at -	
managing the court.	*			
So it's his <b>business to set</b> the <b>domestics to work</b> .	* ngs. opgave / hverv at -	* sætte ng. >	* tjener pl. tyende	* i gang med at -
<b>Domestic servants</b> must be <b>tidy</b> people with <b>tidy</b> habits.	* person, der arbejder i huset / pl. tjenestefolk	* pæn og ordentlig	* =	
The <b>staff of servants</b> takes care that the palace is kept <b>tidy</b> ,	* tyendet		* ordentlig, ryddelig	
especially that the royal <b>apartments</b> are kept <b>neat</b> and <b>tidy</b> .	* gemak	* net, pæn	* =	
The royal <b>gardeners</b> keep the gardens and flower beds <b>tidy</b> .	* gartner		* =	
<b>10</b> The staff <b>starts</b> (E& start) <b>work</b> (U) early in the morning,	* begynde på / gå i gang med >			* arbejdet
It <b>starts</b> / they <b>start on</b> it's / their <b>work</b> with determination.	* ... sit ...			
<b>Setting about</b> the <b>business of clearing</b> and <b>cleaning</b>	* gå i gang med / begynde på ngt.	* arbejde / hverv med at -	* rydde >	* rengøre >
every <b>place</b> in the palace, everybody <b>sets to</b> .	* sted		* gå ivrigt i gang	
<b>Setting about</b> their work, the servants <b>set about</b>	* begynde på ngt.		* ... at -	
<b>cleaning</b> and <b>tidying</b> (up) <b>after</b> the guests.	* gøre rent rydde op	* rydde op	* efter ng.	
As they <b>start clearing up</b> and <b>cleaning up</b> ,	* rydde op		* gøre rent	
they <b>start to clear</b> ( ) <b>up</b> and <b>clean</b> ( ) <b>up</b> all the <b>mess</b>	* rydde ngt. op	* =	* rod, roderi	
in order to <b>tidy</b> ( <b>up</b> ), <b>clear</b> ( ) <b>up</b> , and <b>clean</b> ( ) <b>up</b>	* ordne ngt.	* ordne / rengøre ngt.	* =	
all the <b>untidy</b> , <b>messy</b> , and <b>chaotic</b> places.	* uordentlig	* rodet	* =	
<b>20</b> The <b>dirty</b> floors are <b>smeared with spills of</b> food and drink.	* beskidt	* tilsvinet med ngt.	* ~ spildt	
The <b>smudged</b> and <b>smeared</b> windows and mirrors	* tilpletet		* tilfedtet	
are <b>smudged</b> and <b>smeared with</b> fingerprints.	* ... med ngt.		* ... med ngt.	
<b>Smudgy</b> and <b>smeary</b> windows and mirrors are <b>waiting to</b>	* tilpletet >	* tilfedtet ( vindue / spejl )	* vente på at -	
be <b>cleaned</b> .	* blive rengjort, ~ pudset			
In the <b>messy</b> kitchen, <b>dirty</b> and <b>greasy</b> pots and pans,	* rodet snavset	* beskidt snavset	* fedtet	
<b>stacks</b> of plates, <b>smeared with grease</b> , <b>gravy</b> , and <b>sauce</b> ,	* stak snavset til med ngt.	* indsmurt i / snavset til med ngt.	* fedt ( af kødsaft )	* sovs * sovs
are all waiting to be <b>cleaned</b> / <b>washed</b> together with a lot	* vaske ngt. op			
of <b>smudgy</b> glasses, <b>smudged with</b> fingerprints and lipstick.	* tilsmudset		* tilsmudse ngt. med ngt.	
<b>Smears</b> and <b>smudges of</b> lipstick are difficult to remove.	* plamager		* ... af ngt.	
<b>30</b> <b>Tidying</b> (up), <b>cleaning</b> ( ) (up), <b>clearing</b> ( ) <b>up</b> the kitchen,	* gøre ngt. i orden	* rydde op og gøre rent i ngt.		
the kitchen domestics <b>tidy</b> ( ) <b>away</b> the kitchenware,	* rydde ngt. væk			
<b>clear</b> and <b>clean</b> the <b>dirty</b> kitchen <b>tables</b> ,	* rydde >	* rengøre >	* beskidt	* bord
<b>tidy</b> (up) the <b>kitchen range</b> , and <b>tidy</b> ( ( ) <b>up</b> ) the <b>cupboards</b> .	* ordne >	* ~ brændekomfur	* ... >	* skab
They <b>give</b> the tables a thorough <b>wipe</b> .	* give ngt. en aftørring			
<b>Wiping</b> ( ( ) <b>down</b> ) all the tables, they <b>wipe</b> ( ) <b>up</b> all <b>spill(s)</b> .	* tørre ngt. ( ... i bund m. fugtig klud )	* ... ngt. op	* spildte sager	
They <b>sweep</b> the <b>filthy</b> floor with a <b>broom</b> ,	* feje ngt.		* meget beskidt	
and <b>brush</b> the <b>dust into</b> a <b>dustpan</b> before they wash the floor.	* børste >	* skidt	* ~ op på >	* fejebakke / -blad
When the floor is <b>cleaned</b> , the <b>untidy</b> , <b>messy</b> , <b>chaotic</b>	* gøre ngt. rent	* uordentlig	* =	* =
and <b>filthy</b> kitchen finally ends up <b>clean</b> and <b>tidily arranged</b> .	* meget beskidt	* ren	* ordentligt	* ryddet op



457 The **workload lightens** after the wedding.

**Having** the meals regularly **waiting for** the royal couple, the kitchen **has** breakfast, lunch, dinner or supper **waiting**.

'What's for dinner or supper?' the King often asks.

'**Wait and see,**' the queen replies to **keep** him **waiting in suspense** if there's **something** unexpected **waiting** – if there's perhaps a nice **surprise** waiting for him.

Sometimes the King is **long in coming**.

He may be a **long time coming**.

10 If he **gets home** late in the evening or late at night, the queen often **waits** up, **waiting up** for him.

'I'm sorry I'm late – I'm sorry for having **kept** you **waiting,**' the King says **apologetically**, happy to **be home**.

The Queen looks forward to **get in** the **family way**.

Soon the queen is **expecting: expecting a baby / child**.

The parents **expect** their **first** in **March**.

The **expectant** parents look forward to the **happy event**.

The **consummation** of the marriage is soon visible.

The **expectant** mother's growing **abdomen betrays**

20 the fact that she is **pregnant** – **pregnant with** their first possibly **conceived on** their **wedding night**.

At a time when the queen is **heavily pregnant**, her **eyes feel heavy with fatigue**.

Although it's only afternoon, she feels **sleepy / drowsy**.

**Drifting off**, she **drifts off to sleep** for a moment.

As her **joints** feel **stiff**, she enjoys to **doze on** a **couch**.

Having **drowsed on** a **sofa** / **E& settee** for a while, she wakes up only to **drop off to sleep** again.

Realizing she **nods off to sleep**, the **expectant** father 30 asks her, 'Why don't you **go and have a sleep** (E)?'

'**Go to bed** – you're sick,' he repeats –

'you'll **feel / be all the better for a good night's sleep**.'

**Breathing heavily**, and feeling **light-headed**, she **goes off to sleep** as soon as she's **snug in bed**.

**Having a fever**, the queen **drifts into a profound sleep**.

As he hears a **snore**, the king knows she's fallen asleep.

Having **got a bad cold**, she is **in bed with a heavy cold**.

Having **fallen into a deep sleep**, she **snores heavily**.

\* arbejdsbyrde \* mindskes

\* have ngt. stående og vente ( på ng.)

\* have > \* aftensmad \* ventende

\*

\* vent og se \* lade ng. vente

\* i spænding \* noget ( uventet ) \* ventende

\* ... på ng.

\* være længe om at komme lade vente på sig

\* =

\* komme hjem

\* sidde oppe og vente \* ... på ng.

\* lade ng. vente

\* undskyldende \* være hjemme

\* ~ komme i lykkelige omstændigheder

\* vente sig ( barn )

\* vente ( barn ) \* første \* i / til marts

\* vordende \* glædelig begivenhed familieførelse

\* fuldbyrdelse af ( ægteskab )

\* vordende \* maveregion \* afsløre > gravid

\* ( det fak \* gravid \* ... med ng.

\* undfange ng.

\* højgravid

\* øjne, ~ øjenlåg føles tunge > \* af træthed

\* søvnig / døsig

\* døse hen \* ... og falde i søvn

\* led \* stiv \* døse / slumre \* på > \* sofa

\* døse / slumre \* =

\* ~ døse hen

\* = \* ~ vordende ( far )

\* tage sig en lur

\* gå i seng

\* få det meget bedre efter en god nats søvn

\* ånde / trække vejret tungt \* svimmel ør, uklar

\* falde i søvn \* være > komfortabel \* i seng

\* have feber \* glide ind i > \* meget dyb søvn

\* snork

\* få en > \* slem forkølelse \* ligge i sengen med > \* =

\* falde i ... \* snorke tungt

<b>458</b> The King <b>joins</b> her at her <b>sickbed</b> as much as possible.	* slutte sig til / komme og være sammen med ng.	* sygeleje
Looking at the <b>snorer with</b> utmost <b>affection</b> , the King	* snorkende person	* hengivenhed ømhed, kærlighed
listens to her <b>snores</b> with <b>acute, intense, and deep anxiety</b> .	* snork * stærk * intens * dyb	* bekymring
<b>Heavy</b> and <b>laboured breathing</b> and <b>heavy snoring</b> ,	* tungt > * besværet * åndedræt * tung snorken højt og dybt	
<b>interrupted</b> by a <b>heavy groan</b> or <b>heavy sigh</b> , are <b>succeeded</b>	* afbrudt af * tung * støn * ... suk * efterfulgt af ngt.	
by periods when she <b>breathes at a fast pace, short of breath</b> .	* ånde hurtigt	* kort- / stakåndet
Fortunately, as her <b>breathing eases</b> and <b>gets better</b> ,	* åndedræt * lettes	* blive bedre
she drifts into a light sleep, now just accompanied by	*	
her <b>gentle snoring</b> .	* let snorken	
<b>10 Getting better</b> , she tries to <b>make`light of</b> the situation,	* få det bedre, ~ komme sig	* ~ tage sig ngt. let
but the King can tell that she is worried.	*	
The King only <b>had</b> a <b>slight attack</b> of ( <b>common</b> ) <b>cold</b> .	* være ramt af / udsat for > * mildt * angreb af ...	
As he only <b>has / suffers from</b> a <b>slight cold</b> ,	* let, mild	* forkølelse
he just now and then <b>rolls</b> himself ( <b>up</b> ) <b>in</b> a blanket.	* ~ pakke sig ind i ( tæppe )	
During her <b>pregnancy</b> , like many other <b>pregnant</b> women,	* graviditet	* gravid
the Queen <b>acquires a taste for</b> special kinds of food.	* få smag for ngt.	
When she's <b>better</b> she has an <b>irrepressible</b>	* kommet sig	* uimodståelig
and <b>uncontrollable desire</b> to eat ( <b>a</b> ) <b>round the clock</b> .	* ukontrollabel * ønske / trang til at -	* på alle tidspunkter døgnet rundt
' How <b>heavy</b> am I ? – how much do you think I <b>weigh</b> ? –	* tung	* veje ngt.
<b>20</b> I feel two times <b>heavier than</b> I used to be,' she jokes.	* tungere end -	
The King never <b>makes light of</b> her difficulties or worries.	* lade hånt om / bagatellisere ngt.	
' I'm glad you here – I could do with a little <b>light relief</b> ,'	* noget at ånde lettet op ved	
the queen assures.	*	
Fortunately, having <b>recovered</b> quickly,	* komme sig	
the Queen is soon back <b>in</b> the <b>saddle</b> .	* i >	* sadlen
Childbirth (U) is an event which always involves	* ~ i fuld kontrol	
considerable risks.	*	
A baby may be delivered by a <b>Caesarean / &lt;ian</b> ( <b>section</b> ),	* kejsersnit	
a <b>surgical operation</b> in which the baby is delivered through	* kirurgisk operation	
<b>30</b> an <b>incision</b> made in the <b>abdominal wall</b> and the <b>womb</b>	* ( ind-) snit * bugvæg	* livmoder skød
so called because Julius Caesar was said to have	*	
been born in this way.	*	
<b>Caesarean</b> ( section ) is an <b>abnormal</b> delivery, employed	* anormal, abnorm	
when a <b>foetus / fetus</b> cannot be delivered through the <b>vagina</b>	* foster	* & skede
for instance because it is <b>abnormally positioned</b>	* unormalt	* positioneret bragt i stilling
or is too large to pass through the <b>birth canal</b> .	* ~ fødselsvejene	
In the old days, before <b>an(a)esthetic drugs</b> were <b>invented</b> ,	* bedøvelsesmiddel	* ( blev ) opfundet
the woman was <b>awake</b> during the operation.	* vågen	

<b>459</b> Fear of <b>complication(s)</b> and fears for the lives and safety *	
of both mother and child easily <b>cast a cloud over</b> a childbirth.	* kaste en skygge over ngt.
The queen's smile <b>betrays the fact that</b> her happiness is	* ... ( det faktum ) at -
<b>consummated</b> when a <b>fine healthy</b> baby boy	* fuldbyrdet * fin * sund
<b>sees the light</b> on a <b>lazy / drowsy</b> afternoon in April.	* ~ komme til verden ~ velskab * doven / søvngig
<b>It was quite an event</b> , and then <b>on</b> April 1 <sup>st</sup> ( <b>the first</b> ). E /	* noget af en begivenhed * den ...
<b>on</b> 1 <sup>st</sup> ( <b>the first of</b> ) April E / A: <b>on</b> April 1 ( first ).	* =
They all need a little <b>light relief</b> at the end of the <b>delivery</b> .	* let * aflastning, lettelse * fødsel ~ noget at ånde lettet op ved
It was certainly no <b>April `fool</b> ,	* aprilsnar
<b>10</b> and no one <b>makes an April fool of</b> them this year.	* lave ... med ng.
The mother <b>puts</b> the <b>baby to</b> the <b>breast</b> .	* lægge ng. til sit bryst
When she has <b>given</b> the <b>baby the breast</b> ,	* give ng. ...
the <b>sleepyhead</b> often <b>falls asleep</b> .	* sovetryne * falde i søvn
Usually <b>falling into deep sleep</b> , he <b>sleeps deeply</b> .	* falde i dyb søvn * sove tungt
Sometimes the mother's arm or leg <b>goes to sleep</b> .	* give sig til at sove
When an arm or leg <b>is asleep</b> she changes position.	* ~ sove
A <b>new-born</b> baby is usually a <b>heavy `sleeper</b> .	* nyfødt * en, der sover tungt
<b>Sleeping heavily</b> , the baby <b>sleeps (a)round the clock</b> .	* sove tungt * ... døgnet rundt
The baby has <b>startling dark blue</b> eyes.	* klar ( om farve ) * mørkeblå
<b>20</b> When mother and child <b>are fast asleep</b> and <b>sleep well</b> ,	* sove fast ( sovende ) * sove godt
the father takes care not to <b>wake them up</b> –	* vække ng.
they must <b>have</b> their <b>sleep `out</b> .	* ~ få sovet ud
He often <b>lays</b> his child <b>to sleep</b> .	* lægge ng. til at sove / & i seng
The baby is <b>light as a feather</b> .	* let som en fjer
When he <b>put</b> his child <b>to bed</b> , he <b>puts</b> him <b>to sleep</b> .	* lægge ng. i seng * <<
Although the baby is a(n) <b>(a)round-the-clock sleeper</b> ,	* en, der sover døgnet rundt
it doesn't <b>sleep through</b> – it doesn't <b>sleep through</b> the night.	* sove igennem
A child may <b>sleep badly</b> and <b>wake up</b> crying.	* ... dårligt * vågne
An <b>erupting</b> tooth may cause pain.	* frembrydende
<b>30 `Baby teeth / E&amp; milk teeth erupt</b> during early childhood.	* bryde frem
The <b>set of baby teeth</b> is replaced by a set of	* sæt mælketænder
<b>permanent teeth</b> .	* blivende ...
Much of the parents' life <b>revolves around</b> their child.	* dreje sig / handle om ngt.
Having a baby certainly <b>adds</b> a lot of <b>spice to</b> their <b>lives</b> .	* ~ sætte ( en masse ) krydderi på ngs. tilværelse
At a time they have to <b>wean</b> the baby.	* vænne ng. `fra
Little by little, the baby must be <b>weaned from suckling</b> .	* ... fra at - * die
So <b>weaned off</b> its <b>feeds</b> , it's <b>weaned off</b> a fluid <b>diet</b> ,	* ... fra > * ~ babymælkeåltid * - - > * føde
and <b>weaned onto</b> solid food,	* ... ng. til ngt.

<b>460</b> Having <b>put on / gained weight</b> the Queen is	* tage på >	* ( i ) vægt
a true <b>heavyweight</b> , <b>several</b> kilos <b>heavier than</b> she was.	* sværvægter tungere end gennemsnittet	* flere * tungere end - adskillige
The King, on the contrary, has <b>lost weight</b> –	* tabe sig	
he's a <b>lightweight</b> just a few kilos <b>lighter than</b> he was.	* letvægter lettere end gennemsnittet	* lettere
<b>Going on a diet</b> , the Queen <b>diets</b> to lose weight.	* gå på > * diet / slankekur	* spise diæt ~ særlig kost
So she <b>sticks to a light diet</b> and <b>light</b> meals,	* holde sig til * kaloriefattig	* kost, føde * let diæt lille
while the King has a <b>heavier</b> diet and <b>bigger</b> meals.	* kalorierig	* stor
The Queen is soon well enough to <b>do a little light exercise</b>	* lave >	* let * træning, ~ motion
so she regularly <b>takes</b> (E) <b>light</b> exercise.	* - - -	
<b>10</b> The baby boy is equally <b>beloved by / of</b> both parents.	* elsket af ng.	
Although the parents themselves spent much time	*	
taking care of their <b>beloved</b> child, a <b>nurse</b> (< <b>maid</b> ) is hired	* elskede ( barn )	* barneplejerske
to <b>reduce</b> the Queen's <b>workload</b> .	* reducere / mindske >	* arbejdsbyrde
Usually the nurse changes the baby's <b>dirty nappy</b> E/A	* beskidt	* ble
<b>diaper soiled with</b> liquid and semi-solid <b>waste</b> .	* =	* tilsvinet med ng. * ~ afføring
On order to keep the <b>offensive odour</b> away from her nose,	* modbydelig	* stank
she <b>holds</b> the <b>soiled</b> nappy / diaper <b>at arm's length</b> .	* holde >	* beskidt ( ble ) * ud i strakt arm
The nurse must be a <b>light sleeper</b>	* en, der sover let	
<b>Drifting</b> or <b>falling into</b> a <b>light sleep</b> or <b>light doze</b> ,	* glide ( ind i ) * falde i * let søvn	* ... dø
<b>20</b> and <b>sleeping lightly</b> she is able to <b>wake up lightly</b>	* sove let	* vågne let
from her <b>light sleep</b> .	* let søvn	
While she <b>carries</b> and <b>cradles</b> the baby <b>in her arms</b>	* bære / holde ng. * vugge ng.	* i sine arme
the parents can <b>sleep through</b> it all.	* sove fra ng.	
During their <b>waking hours</b> the parents regularly ask,'	* vågne	* timer, ~ tid
<b>Has</b> the baby <b>woken</b> (up) yet – <b>has</b> he <b>wakened</b> (up) –	* vågne	* =
<b>has</b> he <b>awakened</b> yet.	* =	
As they don't intend to <b>waken</b> the baby (up), they keep	* vække ng.	
' <b>emphasizing</b> ,' Don't <b>waken up</b> the baby – don't <b>awaken</b> him	* indskærpe	* = * =
If the sick child <b>wakes up with</b> a <b>start</b> , and cries for	* vågne ( op ) >	* med et sæt
<b>30</b> his mother or father, they may only <b>get a few hours' sleep</b> .	* få ( nogle få ) timers søvn	
Sometimes they <b>pass a sleepless</b> night worrying	* tilbringe	* en søvnløs ( nat )
as they spend a <b>wakeful</b> night worrying about their child.	~ ligge søvnløs ( hele natten )	
Normally they don't <b>need</b> many <b>hours' sleep</b> .	* vågen ( nat )	
Yet, when they sometimes don't <b>get to sleep</b> ,	* behøve mange timers søvn	
and <b>pass a wakeful</b> night, they really <b>feel sleepy</b> ,	* falde i søvn, få sovet	
and <b>look sleepy</b> in the morning.	* tilbringe * en vågen ( nat ) * føle sig søvngig	
A <b>splash of</b> cold water in the face usually <b>wakes</b> them <b>up</b> ;	~ ligge vågen ( hele natten )	
it often has to <b>wake up</b> the sleepy parents.	* se søvngig ud	
	* sjask ( vand )	* gøre ng. mere vågen
	* =	

461 Most people talk in their **sleep**.

Some people **sleepwalk**; they **walk** while **asleep**.

Suffering from **sleepwalking** also called **somnambulism**.

If a **sleeper** walks in his **sleep**, the **sleep-walker** should just be **taken by the arm** and guided back to bed.

**Awake** or **asleep**, the **babe in `arms** (o-f) is **the light of his parents' eyes**.

One day the **infant in arms** or **child in arms** will be **light of foot**, perhaps a **light-footed rascal**, **10** noisy and **mischievous**, and difficult to **master**.  
' Will he **eventually be a burden to us, unruly, ungovernable, and unmanageable** ? ' the King asks,

- ' Will he **make enough noise to wake the dead** ? ' ' **Wait and see**, ' the queen answers.

' Will he need a **firm hand**, ' the king goes on.

' **Let us wait and see**. ' Some adults find it difficult to **relate to** children.

' **Let us wait and see**. ' The personal and social development of the child

**are** strongly and **inextricably linked**.

**20** Strong family ties **link** a family **together**.

A child learns how to **link** words **to** objects, action(s)

and **conception(s) / `concepts**.

**Showering** their love (**up**) on their children,

the parents **distance** themselves from **heavy-`handed**

**child-rearing methods / methods of upbringing**.

They **dissociate** themselves from **harsh punishment**.

As they **disavow** cruel, severe and unkind punishment

they **take** vigorous **exception to** harsh punishment.

So they are not too **heavy on** their children.

**30** They would never **crown** them **with** a **heavy blow**,

or **give** them a ( **sharp** ) **rap on / over / across the knuckles**.

They agree only to **crown** them **with** a **light blow**.

If they find it necessary to **rap** their **knuckles**

**as** a **punishment**, they just **give** them a **light rap**

**on / over / across the knuckles**.

Parents who expect their children to be a **paragon of virtue**,

and their upbringing to be **problem-free** and **unproblematic**

may **be in for** a **rude awakening**.

Some people are **weaned on** ( a diet of ) **rigid discipline**.

\* i søvne

\* gå i søvne

\* søvngænger

\* sovende

\* tage ng. i armen

\* vågen \* sovende \* barn, der ikke er begyndt at gå

\* ~ øjesten

\* <<

\* let til bens

\* ondsindet ~ drillesyg ( om børn )

\* sluttelig \* være en byrde for

\* muligvis

\* =

\* ~ støj som ind i helvede

\* ~ det vil vise sig

\* fast hånd

\* & se tiden an

\* forholde sig til ng.

\*

\* være > \* uløseligt

\* knytte ng. / ngt. sammen

\* =

\* undfangelse, opfattelse, ide, begreb

\* ide, begreb

\* ~ overøse ng. med ngt.

\* lægge afstand til ngt.

\* børneopdragelses- \* metode \* = ⇔ \* opdragelses-

\* tage afstand fra / nægte at støtte ngt.

\* & nægte at vedkende sig ngt.

\* & nægte at vedkende sig ngt.

\* tage >

\* streng mod ng.

\* streng mod ng.

\* ~ give ng. en ( ordentlig en ) på hovedet

\* give ng. et ( hårdt ) rap / en ( ordentlig en ) over nallerne

\* ~ slå ng. oven i hovedet \* med > \* let \* slag

\* ~ give ng. nogen over nallerne

\* som ( en ) straf \* give ng. >

\* over fingrene

\* over fingrene

\* dydsmønster

\* problemfri

\* problemfri

\* ~ kunne vente sig ngt.

\* ~ kunne vente sig ngt.

\* vænnet til ngt. fra en tidlig alder

\* vænnet til ngt. fra en tidlig alder

\* streng \* disciplin

\* =

\* =

\* søvngænger

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* ~ være herre over

\* uregerlig

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

\* =

462 Happily married to <b>the light of his `life</b> ,	* sit livs lys	
and having <b>added</b> much to his <b>experience</b> ,	* blive ( mange ) erfaringer rigere	
the King recalls his sexual <b>awakening innocently</b> starting	* opvågningen gryende bevidsthed	* uskyldigt
with <b>heavy `petting</b> .	* heftigt kæleri	
Two princes and two princesses <b>see the light ( of day )</b> .	* se dagens lys komme til verden	
Every time there's great <b>rejoicing at / over</b> the happy news.	* ( stor ) glæde over ngt.	
It's a time of <b>rejoicing(s)</b> .	* ( tid ) fuld af glæde glædesfyldt ( tid )	
Each time the parents have cause to <b>rejoice</b> ,	* glæde sig	
they <b>rejoice</b> at an expected <b>increase</b> in the <b>family</b> ,	* glædes ved / fryde sig over >	* forøgelse * i familien ~ familieforøgelse
<b>10 rejoice over</b> the <b>addition to</b> the <b>family</b> ,	* =	
and <b>rejoice in</b> the sound of quick <b>light footsteps</b> all around.	* =	* let * fodtrin
They <b>rejoice that</b> all their children thrive.	* ... at -	
Even if their children don't always <b>keep out of mischief</b> ,	* holde sig fra ngt.	* spilopper gavtyvestreger
the parents <b>rejoice to</b> see them <b>develop</b> and <b>shape well</b> .	* << * udvikle sig	* arte sig godt
Everytime the King returns after some time of <b>absence</b>	* fravær >	
<b>from home</b> , the children <b>rush to</b> greet him <b>arms outstretched</b> .	* ~ hjemmefra * fare afsted for at - * ~ med udstrakte arme	
' Come <b>quick(ly)</b> ! Come on ! <b>Quick !</b> ' they <b>rap out</b> .	* hurtigt	* = * udslynge udstøde
Each of them want to get to him <b>quickest</b>	* hurtigst	
and <b>hurl</b> themselves <b>into</b> his <b>arms</b> .	* kaste sig >	* i ngs. arme
<b>20 ' Watch how</b> you hold those <b>scissors</b> (pl.) – you could	* holde øje med / passe på hvordan -	* saks
<b>do yourself a `mischief</b> ,' the King warns one of them.	* gøre en ulykke på sig selv komme til skade	
When the <b>lively</b> little princes and princesses <b>are up to</b>	* livlig rask	* være ude på >
<b>mischief</b> , a <b>mischievous gleam / glint lights</b> ( )`up their <b>eyes</b> .	* spilopper * skælmsk * glimt * få ngs. øjne til at lyse op	
The <b>eyes</b> of the <b>imp</b> are <b>bright with mischief</b>	* øjnene >	* djævlunge * lyse af spilopper ~ spilopmager
when he <b>grabs</b> a handful of his sisters hair and <b>jerks at</b> it.	* tage fat i ngt.	* rykke i ngt.
Having <b>played tricks</b> ( on someone ) and <b>got into mischief</b> ,	* lave narrestreger	* rode sig ind i ...
the <b>mischievous</b> little children come <b>thundering</b> through	* skælmsk	* tordne / fare + adv.
the rooms with a <b>mischievous / impish grin</b> .	* gavtyveagtig	* smil
Without wanting to admit it, the <b>sleepy</b> little `mischiefs	* søvnig	* djævel, gavtyv spilopmager
<b>30 can't help yawning sleepily</b> .	* gabe	* søvnigt
' It's late – go to bed ' the parents <b>urge</b> ( the <b>sleepyheads</b> ).	* søvnigpeter	* formane ( ng.)
Finally the parents orders, ' <b>Go to sleep</b> – it's bedtime –	* gå i seng	
so <b>good night – sleep tight</b> .'	* go' nat og sov godt	
They sometimes <b>sleep `in</b> .	* sove længe	
They <b>sleep `late</b> on Sundays and holidays.	* =	
The family is <b>waiting to</b> see the Queen's parents.	* vente på at -	
Sometimes they have a <b>long wait</b> – a <b>long wait for</b> them.	* lang	* venten * ... på ng.
The King won't <b>load</b> his wife <b>down with</b> more <b>pregnances</b> .	* belaste ng. med ngt.	* graviditet
So he won't <b>burden</b> his wife or himself <b>with</b> more children.	* bebyrde / belaste / belemre ng. med ngt.	

THE KING AND POLITICS

<b>463</b> The King's <b>study</b> is a <b>light</b> and <b>spacious</b> room.	* arbejdsværelse	* lyst	* rummeligt
When <b>it's light</b> , he can work in the <b>natural light of day</b> .	* det er lyst om dagen	* naturligt	* dagslys
In ( the ) winter, <b>it gets dark</b> early / about 5 o'clock.	* det bliver mørkt		
When <b>it's dark outside</b> as in the ( <b>dark</b> ) <b>winter('s) days /</b>	* mørkt	* udenfor	* i vinterdagene ( i de mørke vinterdage )
<b>/ on ( dark ) winter('s) days / on a ( dark ) winter('s) day,</b>	* på ( mørke ) ...dage		* på en ( mørk ) ...dag
he works <b>by artificial light: by candlelight</b> and <b>lamplight</b> .	* i kunstigt lys	* i lyset fra levende lys	* lampelys
<b>Heavily</b> E/A <b>heavy</b> <b>into</b> politics, the King becomes	* stærkt inde i ngt.		
<b>heavily involved</b> in politics in his own way.	* stærkt		* involveret i ( politik )
He's an <b>avid / a keen collector of</b> books.	* ivrig		* samler af ngt.
<b>10</b> Although the King is a man of <b>comprehensive knowledge,</b>	* omfattende, alsidig >		* viden
he finds some books quite <b>heavy</b> .	* tung		
Some <b>heavyweight</b> writers and subjects are <b>heavy going</b> .	* vanskelig at forstå		
One day the King's eyes had <b>alighted (up)on</b> a book.	* sværvægts-	* ~ svær at have med at gøre / forstå	
He had <b>alighted (up)on</b> an interesting book as he had	* falde over ( lande på ) ngt.		
<b>lighted / lit on</b> a book giving a <b>comprehensive description</b>	* =		
of liberalism <b>in the light of the Crown</b> and <b>royal power</b> .	* omfattende, alsidig >		* beskrivelse
Full of <b>wit</b> and wisdom, it's a book <b>setting ( ) `forth / `out</b>	* i lyset af / relation til ngt.	* ~ kongemagten	* kongemagt
<b>a thorough</b> and <b>comprehensive study into</b>	* vid	* fremstille ngt. ( i tale / på skrift )	
<b>a comprehensive range of socioeconomic</b> relations.	* grundig >	* omfattende >	* studie / undersøgelse af ngt.
<b>20</b> The King <b>can relate to</b> books like that.	* omfattende >	* mængde	* socioøkonomisk
As one of the <b>leading lights in</b> the philosophical <b>world,</b>	* forstå sig på ngt.		
the author is <b>light years ahead of conventual wisdom</b>	* førerskikkelse indenfor >		* ( filosofisk ) verden
and the <b>prevailing</b> opinion.	* lysår foran	* ~ den gængse mening / opfattelse	
<b>Lightyears ahead,</b> he is an intellectual <b>heavyweight,</b>	* herskende ( mening )		
<b>light years ahead</b> of most of the nobility.	* lysår foran		* sværvægter
( <b>a ligh year</b> is the distance the light <b>travels</b> in one year.)	* ... ng.		
The book <b>shows</b> the society <b>in a different light</b> .	* lysår ca. 10. 000. 000. 000. 000 km		
It shows that something is <b>out of joint in</b> the society.	* vise ngt. >		* i et anderledes lys
<b>The time is out of joint.</b>	* ~ ikke som det skal være		
<b>30</b> The author is a <b>leading light in</b> social debate,	* tiden er af lave		
and a <b>leading light of</b> social <b>debaters</b> .	* ~ ledestjerne i ngt.		
His opinions <b>carry</b> ( a lot of ) <b>weight with</b> the King.	* ... blant ng.		* debattør
The author is <b>lightyears better than</b> most <b>leading,</b>	* ~ øve ( stor ) indflydelse på ng		
<b>trendsetting</b> and <b>pacesetting</b> social debaters,	* lysår bedre end ng.		* ledende
and his book <b>lightyears better</b> than most others.	* toneangivende		* =
<b>Deploying</b> all his talent, he <b>deploys powerful</b> arguments.	* <<		
<b>Deployment</b> of talent and <b>argumentation</b> is his <b>hallmark</b> .	* anvende / udnytte ( talent )	* ... stærkt ( argument )	
Some of his writing has not yet <b>seen the `light ( of day )</b> .	* -lse	* argumentation	* adelsmærke
	* se dagens lys, ~ blive offentliggjort		

<b>464</b> The book <b>quickens</b> the King's <b>interest</b> in <b>social science</b> .	* forstærke * interesse ( for ngt.) * samfundsvidenskab / øge >	
The Queen's <b>interest quickens</b> too, as she's told about it.	* interesse >	forstærkes / øges
The King reads <b>fast</b> and learns <b>quickly</b> .	* hurtigt	* =
He is a <b>fast</b> and <b>avid reader</b> and a <b>fast / quick learner</b> .	* hurtig * ivrig * læser	* = * elev ~ hurtig til at lære
<b>Soaking up</b> knowledge and language, he is <b>quick to learn</b> .	* suge ( viden etc. ) til sig ~ ( nemt ) tilegne sig ...	* hurtig til at -
He is <b>quick on the uptake</b> even if the text is quite <b>laboured</b>	* hurtig til at kapere / opfatte	* omstændelig
so he is able to understand <b>quickly</b> what the author	* hurtigt	
<b>has got to say</b> , and <b>what is on</b> his <b>mind</b> .	* have at sige	* hvad ng. har på sinde
He is, in fact, very <b>witty</b> and very <b>quick</b> .	* fuld af vid og humor	* kvik
<b>10</b> Taking an <b>avid interest</b> in economic and social science,	* fatte >	* ivrig * interesse for ngt.
he amazes everybody with his <b>agile mind / brain</b> :	* kvik >	* opfattelsesevne / hjerne
his <b>quickness</b> and <b>eagerness to learn</b> .	* hurtighed ( til ) >	* iver ( efter ) > * at -
His American <b>connections</b> call him a <b>quick study</b> .	* bekendte	* ~ lærenem elev
Besides his reputation as a <b>quick worker</b> ,	* ~ hurtigtarbejdende person	
the King is known to be <b>quick-witted</b> and entertaining.	* ~ hurtig i opfattelsen, kvik, opvakt, snarrådig	
He is known for his <b>wittiness</b> , his <b>witty</b> remarks,	* vittig kløgtighed	* kvik ( bemærkning )
and the <b>quickness of his wit</b> .	* hurtighed i	* vid, vittig kløgt ~ opvakt- / snarrådig
For a time the book <b>engrosses</b> all the King's <b>attention</b> .	* optage >	* opmærksomhed
Sitting in his <b>armchair</b> , he once in a while <b>folds</b> his <b>arms</b>	* armstol	* ~ lægge armene over kors
<b>20</b> and <b>leans back deep in thought</b> .	* læne sig tilbage	* ~ fordybet i tanker ( tankevirkosomhed )
Leaning back in his chair, alternately <b>crossing</b> his <b>arms</b>	* =	
and <b>resting</b> his <b>arms</b> on the <b>arms of the chair</b> ,	* hvile armen(e)	* stolearmen(e)
he <b>thinks ( ) over</b> the matters, <b>deeply engrossed</b> .	* tænke over / overveje gennemtænke ngt.	* helt opslugt
<b>Thinking ( ) out</b> and formulating plan, the King spends	* udtænke / gennemtænke >	* formulere ( plan )
many of his waking hours <b>buried</b> and <b>engrossed in</b> the book.	* begravet / fordybet i ngt.	* opslugt af / fordybet i ngt.
Although the book describes an <b>engrossing</b> problem,	* opmærksomhedskrævende	
the King takes care not to let it <b>engross</b> him totally.	* opsluge / -tage ng.	
One time when he is <b>engrossed with</b> reading,	* fuldt beskæftiget med ngt.	
<b>30</b> and totally <b>absorbed in</b> the book, the Queen <b>barges in</b> .	* opslugt af / fordybet i ngt.	* brase ind
Her coming <b>barging into</b> the study <b>makes</b> the King <b>jump</b> .	* ... i ngt. * få > * ~ ng. til at fare op med et spjæt / det til at give et sæt i ng.	
<b>Intent (up)on</b> his studies, <b>lost in thought</b> , the King <b>starts</b>	* optaget af ngt. * fordybet i tanker	* ~ fare op med et sæt
( <b>from</b> his chair ) as he <b>twist</b> in his chair to see who it is.	* fra ngt.	* vride sig om
' Sorry, I didn't mean to <b>startle</b> you,' the Queen says	* forskrække ng.	
apologetically,' but I have a <b>startling question</b> , just a <b>quickie</b> .'	* forbløffende / overraskende	* spørgsmål * et hurtigt et
<b>Perching</b> on the <b>arm of his chair</b> , and having been	* sætte sig / sidde og balancere på ngt.	* stolearm
<b>engrossed in conversation with</b> her husband, she concludes	* fordybet i samtale med ng.	
<b>wittily</b> , ' Don't deny you were <b>startled</b> by my question.'	* kvikt og muntert	* overrasket / forbløffet over ngt.
The Queen sticks to a bit of <b>light reading</b> , (a) <b>narrative</b>	* let / underholdnings- litteratur	* fortælling
<b>laced with</b> a great deal of clever and amusing <b>asides</b> .	* spækket med ngt. * munter * sidebemærkning	

<b>465</b> The Queen <b>reads folk tales to</b> her children,	* læse > * folke- * fortælling * for ng.
and <b>reads them fairy tales</b> about <b>good</b> and <b>wicked</b> fairies.	~ eventyr * læse ng. > * alfe, fe * fortælling * gode / onde ~ læse eventyr for ng. ( <...er )
<b>Embracing</b> new liberal ideas, the King <b>reads</b> his book	* favne ( ide ) * læse / ... i ng.
every night <b>by the light of</b> the <b>bedside lamp</b> .	* i lyset fra ng. * sengelampe
The book is <b>intelligible</b> ; it's <b>readily intelligible to</b> the King.	* forståelig * umiddelbart * ... for
The <b>novelist</b> appears in the book as a first-person <b>narrator</b> .	* romanforfatter * fortæller
He <b>narrates / relates</b> his <b>adventures</b> around the world.	* fortælle / berette > * ~ fantastiske oplevelser
The novel is a startling <b>narration</b> and a gripping <b>narrative</b> of	* fortælling * = beretning
his journey, each <b>plot about</b> a very different <b>imaginary</b> region.	* handlingsforløb om ng. * opdigtet
<b>10</b> So in terms of <b>plot</b> (U), it is <b>narrative fiction</b> , and as a <b>wit</b>	* handling * fortællende * fiktion * kvik og vittig > opspind person / -t hoved
and <b>raconteur</b> , the author is a master of <b>narration / narrative</b> .	* fortæller * fortællekunst
Each <b>plot</b> is a <b>series</b> of very surprising events.	* handlingsforløb * serie
Through a number of <b>allegories</b> , the book <b>traces</b> the history	* allegori * efterspore ng. symbolsk fremstilling
of philosophy and its <b>relationship to</b> ethics and politics <b>from</b>	* forhold til ng. * fra ng. >
ancient Greece <b>to the present day</b> .	* til nutiden / vore dage
The King often <b>reads himself to sleep</b> .	* læse sig > * i søvn
Reading sometimes <b>sends him to sleep</b> as it may be	* få ng. til at falde i søvn
hard to <b>stay awake</b> during boring passages.	* holde sig vågen
Having <b>read through</b> the book, he is familiar with	* gennemlæse ng.
<b>20</b> the <b>comprehensive</b> views, he <b>read in</b> the book.	* omfattende / alsidig ( betragtning ) * læse i ng.
The ideas of <b>the Enlightenment underlie</b> the book.	* ( ideer fra ) oplysningen * ligge til grund for ( bog ) ~ oplysningstiden
<b>In the form of allegory</b> , the ideas and views <b>come to light</b> .	* i form af > * allegori * se dagens lys
The book has a <b>startling</b> effect on the King.	* forbløffende
The King is <b>startled by</b> the conclusions of the book.	* overrasket / forbløffet / foruroliget / opskræmt over ng.
He is <b>startled to</b> read such surprising <b>analysis</b> (U) :	* ... at - * analyse
such frightening <b>analyses</b> (pl.) of today's society, and	* =
the <b>prospects in the short</b> , the <b>medium</b> , and the <b>long term</b> .	* perspektiv * ~ på kort > * mellem- * langt > * sigt udsigt langt >
The book reveals <b>startling contrasts</b> between the classes.	* overraskende, forbløffende * kontrast foruroligende, skræmmende
It's been a <b>startling discovery that</b> such contrasts <b>prevail</b> .	* forskrækkende * opdagelse at - * ng. er frem- opskræmmende herskende
<b>30</b> They may one day <b>set the world alight / on fire</b> .	* sætte verden i brand, ~ vække opsigt ~ gøre sin indflydelse vældigt gældende
It is <b>startling to</b> read that the society is <b>on the brink of</b>	* ... at - * på randen af >
social <b>upheaval</b> which may lead to a <b>major</b> political <b>upheaval</b> .	* omvæltning * større * ... ûp`hi~vél
The book makes the King build up a <b>stock of</b> arguments	* lager ( -behodning ) af ( argumenter )
as it <b>startles him to acknowledge that</b> the society may be	* forurolige / forskrække / * erkende at - skræmme ng. at -
<b>on the brink / verge of</b> a <b>popular uprising</b> or even revolution.	* på randen / kanten af > * folkelig opstand
<b>Awaking emotions</b> , involment in philosophy can <b>awaken</b>	* vække følelser * vække >
an <b>interest</b> that will <b>last a lifetime</b> .	* interesse * vare > * ~ hele livet
Their respect of human rights <b>links</b> the author <b>and</b> the King.	* sammenkæde ng. og ng.
It <b>makes a connection between</b> the two.	* skabe > * en forbindelse mellem ng.



467 The book is inspired the <b>French Revolution</b> of 1789,	* Den Franske Revolution
and by the preceding <b>American Revolution</b> ( 1775 – 1783 )	* ~ Den Amerikanske Frihedskrig
( the successful <b>revolt</b> of the American colonies	* oprør
ri' vœult	*
by which they won their independence from Great Britain ).	* forbindelse mellem ngt.
The book describes the <b>relationship between</b>	* klasesamfund * relateret
<b>class society</b> and poverty-related problems.	
It <b>relates that class barrier</b> and <b>unequal</b> rights have	* berette / * klaseskel * ulige ( rettigheder )
become an <b>impediment to</b> economic growth.	fortælle at -
	* hæmsko for ngt.
It <b>relates who</b> profits from <b>class distinction, relates when,</b>	* berette / fortælle om hvxx - * klasse- * skelnen * =
<b>10 where,</b> and <b>how class distinctions</b> developed, and	* = * klasse- * forskelligheder
<b>which</b> means are used to maintain a <b>class-divided</b> society.	* = * klasedelt
It <b>relates</b> poverty and <b>distress</b> ( <b>anguish, agony,</b>	* sammenholde * kval * kval, pine * & dødskamp
<b>adversity, hardship(s)</b> and <b>tribulation</b> ). Look a page 500 !	ngt. og ngt. nød, sorg smerte
êd' vê--sêti	* modgang * besværlighed, modgang * modgang
It <b>relates</b> poverty <b>to</b> physical and mental suffering.	ulykke afsagn, (strabadser) prøvelse
Poverty and a feeling of great worry <b>are</b> closely <b>related</b> .	* sætte ngt. i forbindelse med ngt.
The book then <b>relates a link between inequality</b>	* ( fattigdom og bekymring ) er ( tæt ) forbundet
<b>and social unrest.</b>	* berette / * forbindelse * ulighed
It maintains the <b>linkage between</b> social <b>inequalities</b>	fortælle om ngt. mellem ngt. og ngt.
and political unrest and other <b>related</b> issues.	* ( social ) uro
<b>20 It links</b> social <b>imbalance and popular unrest.</b>	* forbindelse mellem > * uligheder
It <b>links</b> social imbalance(s) <b>with</b> civil unrest.	* beslægtet
It <b>links</b> civil unrest <b>to</b> social <b>disparity.</b>	* sammenkæde > * ubalance * og * folkelig * uro
<b>Research establishes that</b> the poverty of the lower classes	* kæde ngt. sammen med ngt
is <b>linked to</b> social oppression, and <b>inextricably linked with</b>	* knytte ngt. til ngt. * ulighed
the social exploitation <b>orchestrated by</b> the upper classes.	forsknel
The lower classes are upset, and the King can <b>relate to</b> that.	* forskning * fastslå at - ( fattigdom )
The book <b>relates to</b> the <b>cloud of revolution.</b>	* knyttet til * uløseligt * forbundet med >
Political unrest <b>and disparity between</b> the rich and the poor	( undertrykkelse )
<b>are</b> closely, strongly, and <b>directly linked.</b>	* ( udnyttelse ) * minutløst iværksat af ng.
<b>30 The book establishes evidence for strong causal links</b>	* forholde sig til det
<b>between</b> psychological, social and political factors.	* forholde sig til ngt. * fare / * & omvæltning
<b>Connecting</b> popular unrest <b>and</b> mental suffering,	trussel om ngt.
the book <b>establishes</b> an <b>inextricable connection between</b>	* ( uro ) og * forskel / ulighed mellem ng.
<b>relative</b> poverty <b>and</b> an <b>immanent</b> urge to <b>rebel / revolt.</b>	* er > * tæt * stærkt * direkte * forbundet
<b>Connecting</b> social unrest <b>to</b> the <b>miseries of</b> poverty,	* tilvejebringe / * tydelig tegn * årsags- * forbindelse >
the book <b>connects</b> financial, physical, and emotional <b>distress</b>	opstille ngt. på ngt. betinget
among the poor <b>with</b> political unrest.	* mellem ngt.
New policies ought to be <b>formulated,</b>	* forbinde ngt. og ngt.
and laws <b>ought to be</b> passed to <b>counter</b> ( <act ) poverty.	* << * uløselig * forbindelse mellem >
	* relativ * iboende, ~ naturlig * gøre oprør
	forholdsvis
	* knytte ngt. til > * kvaler, ~ megen elendighed
	* ... ngt. > * nød, elendighed, lidelse
	* sammen med ngt.
	* formuleret
	* burde * imødegå / afværge ngt.

<b>468</b> Poverty and class struggle are <b>closely connected</b> .	* tæt forbundet
The author <b>demonstrates</b> the <b>causal connection</b>	* påvise / bevise > * årsagsbetinget * forbindelse >
<b>between</b> class barriers and <b>rebellions / revolts / uprisings</b> .	* mellem ngt. og ngt.
It's quite obvious to <b>make the connection</b> .	* skabe sammenhængen, indse forbindelsen
While the king <b>makes</b> the <b>connection between</b> reform	* ... mellem ngt.
and economic development, the nobility <b>make no</b> or <b>little</b>	* ikke / i ringe grad { skabe / indse >
<b>connection between</b> the two.	* sammenhængen / forbindelsen mellem ngt.
The nobility are too <b>hidebound</b> to <b>see the connection</b> .	* forbenet * indse ngt. * =
The <b>narrow-minded</b> nobels refuse to realize <b>there is a link</b> .	* snæversynet * ... forbindelse
<b>10</b> They deny that there is a <b>link between</b> the two facts.	* ... mellem ngt.
They <b>deny</b> a <b>close</b> and <b>strong connection</b> .	* be- / fornægte ngt. * tæt * stærk * forbindelse sammenhæng
The nobility <b>refuse to</b> see the <b>cloud on the horizon</b> .	* afvise at - * den truende sky i horisonten
The nobility refuse to see the <b>cloud of</b> rebellion.	* ~ forvarsel / fare / trussel om ngt.
While the nobility <b>cheerfully</b> enjoy their `privileges,	* munter / ubekymret
and <b>turn a blind `eye to</b> the <b>danger signals</b> ,	* vende det blinde øje til ngt. * faresignal
the <b>storm clouds</b> of revolution are <b>gathering</b> .	* ~ uvejrsskyerne trækker sammen til ( revolution )
The <b>power base</b> of the nobility is <b>horizontally</b> spread	* magt- * base * horisontalt ( udbredt )
by <b>social relations</b> : first of all <b>personal</b> and <b>family relations</b> .	* & ... tilknytningsforhold * ... forbindelse
By means of arranged marriages, the noble families have	*
<b>20</b> become <b>intermarried</b> in all directions.	* indgiftet
So <b>related by marriage</b> in a <b>criss(-)cross ( pattern )</b> ,	* beslægtet ved giftermål * på kryds og tværs
all the members are somehow <b>close</b> or <b>distant relatives</b> .	* nær / fjern * familiemedlem slægtning
Either as <b>blood relations</b> or <b>relations by marriage</b> they are	* blodsbeslægtet person * ... gennem giftermål kødelig slægtning
often both <b>close</b> and <b>distant relations</b> in various ways.	* tæt / fjern * familiemedlem slægtning
So, often both <b>closely</b> and <b>distantly related</b> ,	* tæt / fjernt beslægtet
all the members of the noble families are somehow	*
<b>blood relatives</b> or <b>relatives by marriage</b> .	* blodbeslægtet person * beslægtet gennem giftermål
<b>Vertically</b> the power of the nobility is based on a strict	* vertikalt
<b>master-servant relationship</b> .	* herre-tjener * forhold
<b>30</b> <b>Bringing</b> new fact <b>to light</b> , the book <b>goes on the attack</b> .	* bringe ( fakta ) > * frem i lyset * ~ gå til angreb
It's a <b>scathing attack on</b> the nobility and its <b>policies</b> .	* svidende * angreb på ng. * fremfærdsprincipper bidende, skarp
It strongly <b>attacks</b> the idea of a class-divided society.	* angribe / kritisere ( ide )
The book <b>shows</b> the problems <b>in a new</b> and <b>different light</b> .	* vise ngt. > * i et nyt og anderledes lys
The nobility has <b>come under fierce attack</b> (U).	* komme under / * hårdt * angreb blive udsat for > skarp ~ kritik
It's <b>under sustained attack</b> for its <b>hideboundness</b> .	* være ... * vedvarende * ... for > * forstokket- / snæversynethed
The country, and so the law are <b>in urgent need of</b> reform.	* ~ have > * presserende * behov for ( reform )
<b>Attacking</b> the nobility <b>for</b> their <b>narrow-mindedness</b> ,	* ... ng. for ngt. * snæversynethed
and <b>attacking</b> them for <b>standing in the way of `progress</b> ,	* ... for at - * stå i vejen for > * fremskridt
the book provokes (an) <b>outcry</b> / (an) <b>uproar</b> among the nobility.	* ramaskrig, opstandelse / - - -

<b>469</b> The final <b>chapter</b> <b>relates to</b> the <b>urgent need for</b> reforms.	* kapitel * relatere / forholde sig til >	* presserene * behov for ngt.
The <b>benevolent</b> King is <b>heavily influenced by</b> the book.	* venlig og gavmild	* kraftigt påvirket af ngt.
<b>Influencing</b> his outlook on life, it <b>influences</b> his decisions.	* influere på / påvirke ngt.	
<b> Casting new light on</b> the causes of <b>social misery</b> , the book	* kaste > * ( nyt ) lys på ngt.	* samfunds- * armod mæssig
<b>awakens</b> the King <b>to</b> the dangers of social <b>imbalance(s)</b> .	* vække ng. til ( fig. trans.)	* ubalance (-r )
<b>Ready for</b> and <b>eager for</b> reform and <b>intent on</b> democracy,	* parat til ngt. * ivrig efter / opsat på ngt	* opsat på ngt.
the <b>broad-minded</b> King <b>receives a call to arms</b> .	* ~ åbensindet * modtage > ~ blive kaldt under fanerne	* et kald til våben
<b>Expounding</b> the book's views on society ( <b>to</b> the nobility ),	* fremstille / udlægge / forklare ngt. ( for ng. )	
the King <b>expounds on</b> his new policies.	* fortælle / forklare om ngt.	
<b>10</b> Being <b>out of step with</b> developments / the trend	* ude af trit med ( udvilkningen )	
is a problem any leader can't <b>afford to approach / take lightly</b> .	* tillade sig at - * gribe ( problem ) / tage let på < ligegyldigt / skødesløst an	
It's not a problem he can afford to <b>treat lightly</b> .	* behandle ngt. skødesløst / med lige gyldighed	
The kings have always been <b>engaged in ongoing battles</b>	* blandet ind i / * igangværende	* kamp >
<b>with oppositional circles</b> within the nobility and the clergy	* optaget af ngt. * med >	* oppositionelle * kredse
<b>over</b> power, and <b>for</b> power.	* ~ vedrørende ngt.	* for ngt.
<b>Awaking to</b> his <b>vocation</b> , the King wants reforms.	* vågne op til ( fig. intrans. )	* kald
<b>Sleeping ( ) away</b> neither <b>the hours</b> nor his <b>cares</b> ,	* sove tiden bort * sove fra >	* bekymringer sorger
he wants to <b>liberalize</b> the laws and the political system.	*	
The <b>underprivileged</b> classes have long <b>fought</b>	* upriviligeret	* kæmpe >
<b>20</b> an <b>uphill battle against / with</b> social discrimination.	* en kamp op ad bakke mod ngt.	
The underprivileged classes have long fought for equality	*	
but have <b>so far fought a losing battle</b> .	* indtil nu / videre * kæmpe >	* en forgæves kamp
They have <b>until / ( till ) / up to now lost the battle</b> .	* =	* tabe kampen
Some people regard the King's reforms as <b>up in the clouds</b> .	* ~ højt flyvende	
Although he is accused of <b>having his head in the `clouds</b> ,	* ~ have tankerne andetsteds ikke have jordforbindelse	
the king is prepared to <b>join battle</b> .	* ~ gå i kamp	
He is ready to <b>join battle with</b> his <b>enemies</b> – with those	* ... mod ng.	* fjende
of the nobility who <b>stick to</b> their <b>antiquated</b> and <b>set views</b> .	* stå fast på > * antikverede * ~ fast- * synspunkter gammeldags låste holdninger	
Poverty and <b>ignorance</b> are the <b>enemies of</b> `progress.	* uvidenhed * fjende af >	* fremskridt & fremskridtets fjende
<b>30</b> Feeling an urge to engage in the <b>battle for</b> democracy,	* kamp for ngt.	
the King engages in the <b>battle with</b> the nobility –	* ... med / mod ng,	
a <b>battle with / against</b> social discrimination and inequality	* ... mod ( forskelsbehandling )	
So <b>eager to, keen to</b> and <b>determined to battle with /</b>	* ivrig efter / * = * fast besluttet * kæmpe mod / opsat på at - på at -	
<b>against</b> social discrimination and inequalities, the King is	* mod ngt.	
<b>intent on</b> and <b>bent on battling for</b> freedom and democracy,	* opsat på > * = > * at kæmpe for ngt.	
and <b>keen on</b> and <b>set on battling with</b> the nobility.	* fast besluttet på * = * at kæmpe ~ mod ng.	
Introducing democracy is never a <b>simple proposition</b> .	* & nem	* forehavende, opgave
It's <b>tough work</b> so the King and his <b>kindred spirits</b>	* hårdt arbejde * beslægtede * ånder `kindrød ~ åndsfrænder / -fæller	
have to <b>join together</b> to <b>win the battle</b> .	* slutte sig sammen * vinde >	* kampen ~ gøre fælles sag

**470** The King wants to **democratize** the government by **lessening** the **power of** the aristocracy, and **follow** / **pursue** a **policy arm in arm with** the commons.

As both advocates and opponents of liberal reforms

**stand `fast / firm**, the **battle lines are `drawn**.

So the King **takes up `arms against** the aristocracy.

**Taking up arms against** social and legal **injustice**, he **takes up arms against** an **unjust electoral system loaded in favour of** the upper classes.

**10** The King's **embrace of** democracy makes him want to introduce the right for all citizens to form political parties.

A peaceful and fair government of the country needs parties that ordinary people can **relate to**.

**Directly related to** income, education **levels** among the population are **closely** and **strongly related to** class.

As the King **takes up arms for** the lower classes, he **takes up arms for** a free **education system** for **ordinary people**.

He wants to introduce **the secrecy of the ballot**,

**20 the secrecy of mails** etc.

A ballot may have a **heavy** or **light vote**.

The lower classes **carry** a **heavy burden** of **taxation**.

In order to promote production and trade the king advocates measures to **lighten** the **tax burden on** people who have their **income from employment**, or from **small businesses**.

**Viewing** the King's **policies** in a **favourable / good `light**, his advocates **present** his reforms **in a positive light**.

The King's opponents are **`thunderstruck** as they not at all **see** the **far-reaching** reforms **in that light**.

**30** As they don't **look on** them **in that light**, they **criticize** the reforms **heavily**.

The nobility refuse to **see** the reforms **in a different light**.

So they **intend** to **put** the reforms **in a false light** as well as they **intend** putting the King **in a bad light**.

As they **view** his policies **in an unfavourable light**, the nobility threatens to **counter with** lawsuits, and **present** the reforms **in a negative light**.

Monarchy and liberalism seem **strange `bedfellows**.

A King and a liberalist seem **unlikely bedfellows**.

\* demokratisere ngt.  
 \* mindske > \* ngs. magt  
 \* følge / føre en politik \* ~ i skøn forening med ng.  
 \*  
 \* stå fast \* ~ fronterne \* er trukket op  
 \* drage i felten / føre krig imod ng.  
 \* - = - > \* uretfærdighed  
 \* - = - > \* uretfærdigt \* valg- \* system  
 \* vægtet til fordel for ng.  
 \* omfavelse af ( demokrati )  
 \*  
 \*  
 \* forholde sig til ngt.  
 \* direkte \* knyttet til ngt. \* ( uddannelses-) niveau  
 \* tæt \* \* stærkt \* - = -  
 \* ~ drage i felten for ng.  
 \* = \* uddannelses- \* system, & væsen  
 \* almindelige mennesker  
 \* hemmelighed ved > \* afstemning & hemmelig ...  
 \* ~ brevhemmelighed  
 \* overvældende \* ringe valgdeltagelse  
 \* bære > \* tung \* byrde \* beskatning ~ skattebyrde  
 \*  
 \* lette > \* skattebyrde > \* ~ for ng.  
 \* indkomst fra > \* ansættelse \* små- \* virksomhed ~ lønmødtagerindkomst  
 \* se > \* politiske tiltag \* i et gunstigt lys  
 \* fore- / fremlægge ngt. i et positivt / fordelagtigt ...  
 \* overrasket og chokeret  
 \* se > \* vidtrækkende ( reformer ) \* i det lys  
 \* =  
 \* kritisere ngt. \* voldsomt  
 \* se ngt. > \* i et andet / anderledes lys  
 \* have til hensigt / være opsat på at - \* fremstille ngt. i et falsk lys  
 \* = \* stille ng. > \* i et dårligt lys  
 \* se ngt. > \* i et dårligt lys  
 \* slå igen med ( retssag )  
 \* fremstille ngt. \* i et negativt / ufordelagtigt  
 \* mærkelige \* sengekammerater  
 \* usandsynlige \* =



472 When a mischief has been done,

it may be too late to **make it up / make up for it**.

**Taking** ( ) on an intimate clique of mischief-makers,

a **clannish** band of **haughty** and dangerous opponents

**obsessed** with mischief-making, the King faces /

is **up against** a **daunting** task of formidable **obstacles**.

**Fastening** on(to) // **latching** onto / **on to** his idol,

the King, **nothing** daunted, **latches** on; he **fastens** on(to) //

**latches** onto / **on to** the ideas of his great **example**.

**10** As **self-sufficiency**, arrogance, **haughtiness**,

and pride **cloud** the **outlook** and **vision** of most aristocrats,

the **short-sighted** nobility **fastens on(to)** **hangover** ideals

from **antiquated** role models, and their **outdated** views.

The book is **intended as** a source of inspiration.

**Intended to** be an **eye-opener**, the book is **intended to**  
**prepare the ground for** a more **righteous** society.

**Intended for awareness** and **consciousness raising**,

the book is **intended for open-minded** people.

Fortunately, some leading lights of the intellectual world

**20** **have the wit to see** the need for social **righteousness**.

Some **far-seeing intellectuals** and **kindred spirits**

**connected with** the business and academic world,

**welcome** the King's ideas and plans **with open arms**.

**Keen on** taking advice from these **far-sighted pioneers**,

the King **arrange to make contact with** these **kindred souls**.

It's surely not **beyond the wit of man** to find a **solution**.

It should **not be beyond the wit of man** to **resolve**  
the **issue** and the **dispute** in order to **resolve** the **conflicts**,  
and the **crises** and **problems** the conflicts have caused.

**30** Eager to **pit his wits against** leading lights,

the King appreciates a **battle of wits with** such opponents.

A fierce **battle of wits between disagreeing** opponents  
often turns into a **battle of wills**.

The King's face **takes on** a **set expression** as he will need  
all his **wits to fight** a **battle** ( **with** an opponent ) ( **for** reform ),  
**fight** his opponent, and **win** the **battle**.

The **comprehensive** King is **prepared to fight** every time  
his **mischievous** and **malevolent** opponents **launch / mount /**  
**make an attack on** his **radical** and **comprehensive policy**.

\* ~ når skaden er sket

\* gøre det godt igen

\* ~ oppe imod ng. \* sammenspist indforstået \* klike \* ballademager

\* sammenspist indforstået \* hoven overlegen

\* besat af > \* ballade- / uromageri

\* oppe imod \* skræmmende overvældende ( opgave ) \* forhindringer

\* holde fast ved ng. \* - = - \* & forbillede

\* ~ uforfærdet \* holde fast \* - - - ved >

\* - - - ved ng. \* forbillede

\* selvtilstrækkelighed \* arrogance, hovenhed overlegenhed

\* forplumre / sløre > \* udsyn \* vision, udsyn

\* kortsynet \* hage sig fast ved > \* levn af ng. >

\* fra ng&t. \* forældet \* =

\* påtænkt / ment som ng.

\* påtænkt at være ng. \* øjenåbner \* ... at gøre ng.

\* gøde jorden for ng. \* moralsk retfærdigt

\* tiltænkt for ng. \* bevidstgørelse \* =

\* ... for ng. \* åbensindet

\*

\* være klog / fornuftig nok til at - \* indse ng. \* retfærdighed

\* fremsynet vidtskuende \* intellektuel \* ~ åndsfrænde / -fælle

\* knyttet til ng.

\* byde ng. velkommen \* med åbne arme

\* ivrig efter / opsat på at - \* fremsynet \* & foregangsmand

\* sørge for at - \* ~ skabe kontakt til > \* åndsfrænde / -fælle

\* ( ikke ) hinsides mennesket forstand \* løsning

\* = \* bilægge / løse >

\* sag \* strid \* ... > \* konflikt

\* krise \* problem

\* ~ sætte sin viden på prøve overfor ng.

\* kamp på viden med ng.

\* ... mellem ng. \* ( værende ) uenige

\* ... viljestyrke

\* ( ansigt ) ~ antage et særligt udtryk

\* forstand \* kæmpe > \* kamp ( med ng. ) ( for ng. ) kløgt, vid

\* bekæmpe ng. \* vinde > \* kampen

\* alsidigt begavet / vidende \* forberedt på at - \* kæmpe & være kampberedt

\* ondsindet \* iværksætte >

\* foretage > \* angreb \* gennem- \* omfattende \* politisk på ng. gribende storstilet vision

<b>473</b> The <b>snobbish / stuck-up</b> nobility are <b>scared witless</b> of ( the thought of ) losing their privileges.	* snobbet, hoven * = * skræmt > * fra vid og sans arrogant * over ( at - ) ngt.
<b>Scared / frighten / terrified ( out of their wits )</b>	* skræmt > * fra vid og sans
( <b>that</b> ) the King will be able to <b>carry his plans through</b> , the nobility are <b>up in arms ( about / over</b> the King's reforms ).	* over at - * føre > * plan * igennem ~ gennemføre ... * kampberedt, ~ i krigshumør / oprør ( over ngt.)
So they <b>make strong attacks on</b> the King's <b>policies</b> .	* komme med ... * politiske tiltag
Ready for a <b>pitched battle with</b> his opponents, the King is ready to <b>do battle ( to go through with his plans )</b> .	* ~ voldsomt sammenstød med ng. * gå i kamp, ~ kæmpe
Ready to <b>do battle with</b> an opponent <b>over</b> the reforms,	* ... med ng. over ngt.
<b>10</b> the King often has a <b>comprehensive exchange of words</b> , a <b>passage of arms</b> , or an angry <b>passage with</b> his opponents.	* vidtspændende * ordveksling > * dystende ordveksling / * ordveksling > med ng. ~ holmgang >
<b>Revolving around</b> the <b>class system</b> , a discussion easily develops into a <b>war of words</b> , and a <b>war of nerves in the nature of psychological warfare</b>	* dreje sig om ngt. * klasse- * system * krig på ord, ~ ordkrig * ~ nervekrig * ~ have karakter af > * psykologisk * krigsførelse * ~ få samling på tankerne * = * knytte sig til ngt.
Once in a while a debater pauses to <b>gather his wits</b> ; he pauses to <b>collect</b> and <b>recover</b> his <b>wits</b> .	
Most points <b>link in / tie in with</b> earlier discussions.	
Both parties accuse each other for using <b>loaded</b> words and of coming up with <b>loaded</b> statements.	* ladet, belastende ( ord ) * =
<b>20</b> The <b>smooth manners</b> of many nobles <b>contrast sharply with</b> the noble's <b>mischievous</b> hints and <b>hearts of darkness</b> .	* glat, slesk * manerer * ~ stå i skærende kontrast > * til > * ondsindet ( antydning ) * ~ ondt hjerte * rygter * ~ være i omløb
All kinds of <b>rumours</b> are <b>going (a)round</b> .	
<b>Going (a)round /E about starting vicious rumours</b> about the King's mental health, <b>rumour(-)mongers</b> attempt to <b>smear</b> the King by <b>spreading mischievous, malicious</b> , and <b>malevolent rumours</b> of the King's <b>inability</b> to <b>keep / preserve</b> his <b>sanity</b> .	* gå omkring og - * starte > * ondsindede * rygter > ~ sætte ... .. i gang * om ng&t. * rygtesmed * bagvaske ng. * udsprede > * ond- * ondskabsfuld sindet * = * rygte om > * mangel på evne til at - * bevare > * fornuft, tilregnelighed
A <b>commission of inquiry into</b> the <b>question</b> is <b>set up</b> . Issuing an official <b>denial of</b> the <b>circulating rumour</b> ,	* ~ undersøgelses- * angående * sag * nedsat kommission * dementi / benægtelse af > * cirkulerende
<b>30</b> it issues a <b>denial that</b> there's any <b>truth in</b> the <b>rumour</b> . Even if he is <b>cleared of</b> the charge of criminal <b>mischief</b> , a nobleman is still suspected of launching <b>smear campaigns</b> .	* rygte * ... af at - * sandhed * i rygтет ~ rygтет ( på nogen måde ) taler sandt * rense ng. for ngt. * skade ødelæggelse * smæde- * kampagne
Giving the prosecutor a dark, <b>malevolent stare</b> , and having a <b>malevolent grin on his face</b> , a witness is <b>held in contempt for</b> refusing to testify.	* ondskabsfuldt * stirrende blik * = * smil på læben * ~ anse ng. for at have foragt ( for retten ) for at -
Disregarding this order, any person will be <b>held in contempt</b> , and be <b>guilty of contempt of court</b> .	* ~ betragte ng. som havende foragt for retten * skyldig i ngt. * foragt for retten
The witness could be <b>jailed ( two years ) for contempt</b> , while <b>malevolence in itself</b> is not punishable by law.	* fængsle ng. ( en tid ) for ngt. * foragt * ondskabsfuldhed * i sig selv

<b>474</b> Most noblemen <b>can't relate to</b> modern times	* ~ ikke forstå sig på ngt.
and the social development <b>in the long term</b> .	* på langt sigt
Most nobles can <b>only relate to politics</b> (U+sg. / pl.)	* ~ kun forstå sig på > * politik / politiske emner
which <b>relate(s) to</b> their own <b>short-term</b> interests.	* relatere sig til / angå / vedrøre ngt. * kortsigtet ( interesse )
When they discuss <b>politics</b> and <b>take a stand / position</b>	* politik / politiske emner * tage stilling >
<b>on it / them, they do it with a haughty and smug face</b> .	* til ngt. * arrogant, hoven overlegen * selvtilfreds * ~ mine
When most nobles <b>decide</b> their <b>attitude to</b> politics, they are	* afgøre > * indstilling / holdning til ngt.
only in favour of <b>politics</b> ( political ideas and activities )	* politiske emner
that <b>relate to</b> their own benefit.	* angå / vedrøre ngt.
<b>10</b> The nobility generally <b>hold</b> the lower `classes <b>in contempt</b> ,	* betragte / opfatte ng. med foragt
and usually <b>treat</b> lower-`class people <b>with ( open ) contempt</b> .	* behandle ng. * med ( åbenlys ) foragt
<b>Feeling contempt for</b> the lower classes, the nobility	* føle > * foragt for ng.
look at them <b>with disdain</b> and <b>undisguised contempt</b> .	* med foragt / ringeagt * utilsløret ...
They <b>show deep contempt for</b> the lower classes,	* vise dyb foragt for ng.
and their behaviour often shows <b>utter contempt for</b> them.	* ... udpræget ...
The King <b>can't relate to</b> people like that, and regards	* forstå sig på ng.
their <b>haughty</b> behaviour as mean and <b>contemptible</b> .	* arrogant, hoven overlegen * foragtelig
<b>Contemptuous</b> of course <b>of</b> the King's reforms,	* fuld af foragt overfor ngt.
many noblemen are <b>openly contemptuous of</b> the King.	* åbenlyst ...
<b>20</b> They even <b>have the nerve to</b> throw the King	* have nerver / være fræk nok til / ikke genere sig for at -
a <b>contemptuous</b> glance.	* foragtende ( blik )
One day, an opponent of the King's reforms <b>turns up</b>	* dukke ( uventet ) op * selvtilfreds * overlegen
having a <b>smug</b> and <b>haughty expression on his face</b> .	* udtryk i ansigtet
Provoked by a <b>smug</b> and <b>haughty</b> smile on his face,	* <<
the King asks, ' What are you looking so <b>smug about</b> ?'	* selvtilfreds over ngt.
The nobleman is <b>quick to point ( ) out</b> mistakes; <b>too quick</b> .	* hurtig til at -
' <b>Not so fast</b> – You've got to prove it first,' the King objects,	*
' And don't let your personal feelings <b>cloud</b> your <b>judgement</b> .'	* skygge for / forplumre > * dømmekraft
The King <b>fastens on</b> the term " <b>of noble descent / stock</b> "	* hæfte sig ved ngt. * af ædel afstamning ~ byrd
<b>30</b> in the nobleman's answer while the nobleman <b>fastens on</b>	* =
the King's ideals of <b>liberty, equality and fraternity</b> .	* frihed, lighed og broderskab
The nobleman <b>fastens on to</b> the ideal of noble descent	* holde fast ved ngt.
while the King <b>fastens onto</b> his ideal.	* =
The King is <b>offended by</b> the <b>iniquity</b> of social prejudice,	* være forarget / stødt over ngt. * uretfærdighed forbrydelse
and by the <b>iniquities</b> of the justice system.	* =
The King's <b>assessment</b> of the <b>social imbalance</b>	* vurdering * social > * ubalance ~ samfundsmæssig skævhed
is partly based on the <b>proposition that</b> power <b>corrupts</b> .	* antagelse at - * ( magt ) korrumpere
The King <b>gets on</b> the nobleman's <b>wick</b> (E).	* ~ irritere ng. ( komme på ng's vægge )
<b>Remaining calm</b> may not be an easy <b>proposition / matter</b> .	* forblive > * rolig * nem * opgave ~ bevare sindsroen

**475** Being a **fast** and **penetrating thinker** whose **quickness** makes him an **articulate** and **quick-witted** debater, the King **articulates quick-witted** and **acute** questions, and **expresses articulate** and **sharp** answers.

The **wording** of the King's questions and **propositions** influences who will listen and **how** people react.

**Thrown off balance** by the King's **quick thinking**, many opponents **lose** their **composure in no time**.

As he is **quick on the uptake** and **quick off the mark**, **10** you'll have to be **first off the mark** to **outsmart** the King, and **quick on the draw** to **outwit** him.

Having a **haughty look on** his face, the nobleman keeps **clouding** the issue.

**Unable to relate to up-to-date** facts, the nobleman keeps **clouding** the issue with **antiquated** and **outdated** ideas.

**Caught off balance, wording** only stupid questions and answers, the nobleman seems quite **slow-witted**.

' Stop **beating about E/A around the bush**, and **come to the point** ! ' the King interrupts him after a while.

**20** Even though the nobleman has been **slow off the mark**, he **has** a highly **volatile** personality, and a **quick** temper.

He's an old **misery** (E), so as he is **quick-tempered**, he's **quick to take offence**.

He might have **got out of bed on the wrong side** (E).

He might have **got up on the wrong side of the bed** (A).

His **nails** are **bitten (down) to the quick**.

He is a **quick-tempered** debater who can't control his **quicksilver / mercurial / volatile** temperament.

As he can't **deny (that)** he's **second off the mark**, **30** the nobleman reveals his **haughty** manners, by replying **with haughty disdain**.

The King's criticism **cuts** the nobleman **to the quick**.

His remarks **pierce** the nobleman **to the quick**.

As the King's remarks and criticism **sting** him **to the quick**, the nobleman quickly / soon **gets** very **heavy**.

He **gets heavy with** the King **about** the King's policies

**oriented /E& orientated** to the needs of the underprivileged. Life isn't always a **bed of roses**.

The King continuously has to **iron out** a lot of problems.

\* hurtig \* skarpsindig \* tænker \* hurtig opfattelsesevne  
 \* velformuleret \* opvagt, snarrådig ( debattør )  
 \* formulere / \* opvagt \* skarp (-sindig ) ( spørgsmål ) udtrykke ngt.  
 \* - = - \* velformuleret \* = ( svar )  
 \* ~ ordvalg af > \* forslag, forehavende, påstand  
 \* influere på > \* hvxx \* =  
 \* bringe ng. ud af balance / fatning  
 \* miste besindelsen / fatningen \* meget hurtigt  
 \* hurtig i opfattelsen \* hurtig i optrækket  
 \* hurtigst i optrækket \* udmanøvrere / tage fusen på ng.  
 \* hurtig i aftrækket \* =  
 \* arrogant, hoven \* udtryk > \* i ansigtet overlegen  
 \* forplumre ngt.  
 \* ude af stand til at - \* forstå sig på \* tidssvarende  
 \* forplumre ( sagen ) \* forældet, bedaget \* =  
 \* fanget > \* ude af fatning \* formulere / udtrykke ngt.  
 \* langsom i opfattelsen, tungnem  
 \* ~ snakke udenom  
 \* kom > \* til sagen  
 \* ~ langsom i optrækket  
 \* have > \* letpåvirkelig, lunefuld \* ~ hidsigt ( personlighed ) ( temperament )  
 \* surt spektakel \* ~ hidsig, opfarende  
 \* hurtig til at - \* ~ blive fornærmet  
 \* ~ få det forkerte ben ud af sengen  
 \* =  
 \* negl \* bidt helt ned til > \* kødet ( ømt kød især det under neglene )  
 \* opfarende hidsig  
 \* ~ uberegneligt, letpåvirkelig ( temperament )  
 \* benægte at - \* komme fra start som nummer to  
 \* arrogant, hoven overlegen  
 \* med > \* = \* foragt, ringeagt  
 \* ~ smerte ng. dybt ( skære ng. smerteligt )  
 \* = ( stikke hul i / gennembore ng. )  
 \* = ( stikke ng. i det ømme kød )  
 \* blive ( meget ) truende  
 \* ... overfor ng. pga. ngt.  
 \* orienteret mod ng.  
 \* rosenbed, ~ en dans på roser  
 \* ~ klare, overkomme ( problem )

476 The nobility maintain that they are <b>qualified to bear</b>	* kvalificeret til at -	* bære >
the <b>heavy responsibility for</b> the welfare of their subjects,	* tungt >	* ansvar for ngt.
<b>primarily</b> their simple desire for <b>hearth and home</b> .	* ildsted og hjem, ~ familieliv	
Never hesitating to <b>deny</b> the <b>allegations</b> of the nobility,	* afvise / benægte >	* ( tvivlsom ) påstand
the King accuses the nobility of lack of responsibility,	*	
and ignorance of the <b>widening gap between</b> rich and poor.	* voksende	* gap / kløft mellem ( rig og fattig )
As the noble <b>denies</b> the King's accusations <b>out of`hand</b> ,	* benægte ngt.	* ~ uden videre
the King <b>enlarges on</b> and <b>elaborates on</b> his accusations.	* udbygge / -dybe	* =
<b>Developing</b> his accusations <b>further</b> ,	gå i detaljer med / nærmere ind på ngt.	
<b>10</b> and <b>going more thoroughly into</b> his accusations,	* - - - ( anklage )	
he <b>goes into details about</b> his accusations.	* =	
While the nobility <b>deny themselves</b> neither any pleasure	* nægte sig ngt.	
nor any luxury, they <b>deny ( that )</b> there is a <b>poverty problem</b> .	* ( be- ) ... at -	* fattigdoms- * problem
They either <b>deny</b> the <b>existence of</b> extreme poverty	* afvise / benægte >	* eksistensen of ngt.
among the lower classes or <b>deny being</b> responsible for it.	* ... at -	
The nobility <b>abdicate responsibility /</b> their <b>responsibilities</b> .	* fralægge sig ansvar / svigte deres ansvar	
The nobility <b>stand fast; living in the past</b> , they <b>stand firm</b> .	* stå fast	* leve i fortiden * =
<b>Blaming</b> the troubles <b>on</b> the lower-class man's <b>inborn</b>	være urokkelig	
inferiority and laziness, the nobility <b>wash</b> their <b>hands</b> .	* skyde skylden for ngt. på ngt.	* medfødt
<b>20</b> They <b>deny</b> and <b>disclame</b> the <b>responsibility for</b> poverty.	* ~ fralægge sig ansvaret	
They <b>deny having responsibility</b> for <b>alleviating</b> poverty,	* afvise / benægte > * fralægge sig > * ansvar for ngt.	
and <b>refuse to accept</b> their <b>responsibility to relieve</b> poverty.	* - - - at - * ( have ) ansvar * afhjælpe ( fattigdom )	
As the nobility <b>insist (up)on enjoying</b> their <b>privileges</b> ,	for at >	
they <b>deny</b> the lower classes their basic human rights.	* afvise / * vedkende sig > * ansvar for at > * - - - nægte at >	
<b>Clinging (on) to</b> their privilege of <b>exemption from</b> taxation,	* ~ holde fast ved at > * nyde godt af > * privilegier	
the nobility <b>cling (on) to</b> their <b>resistance to</b> the reforms.	* nægte ng. ngt.	
<b>Holding on to</b> their <b>demand that</b> the lower classes	* klynge sig til ( privilegie )	* fritagelse fra ( skattebetaling )
should <b>be denied</b> their claim to political influence,	* - - - >	* modstand mod ngt.
the nobility <b>influence</b> the government <b>with all their might to</b>	* <<	* krav om at -
<b>30 deny</b> the lower classes political influence.	* nægtes ngt.	
The nobility <b>take a firm`line / stand on</b> traditional values.	* påvirke ng. >	* af al magt * til at -
<b>Taking a firm line / stand against</b> reform, they expect	* nægte ng. ngt.	
the King to <b>deny</b> political influence <b>to</b> the lower classes.	* indtage en fast linje / et fast standpunkt mht. ngt.	
<b>Just like</b> he <b>denies</b> all <b>allegations of irresponsibility</b> ,	* - - - mod ngt.	
this nobleman in audience <b>denies that</b> the lower classes	* & sætte sig imod ngt. til ng.	
deserve any political influence.	* ligesom * afvise / * påstand om > * uansvarlighed	
The King <b>presents</b> the <b>proposition that</b> the oppression	benægte ngt.	
and exploitation of the lower classes by the aristocracy	* ... at -	
are damaging to economic growth, and social rest.	*	
	* fremsætte >	* antagelse / påstand at -
	*	
	*	

<b>477</b> Straight `off / out, the King calls attention to the fact that the situation is <b>getting out of hand</b> .	* ~ lige ud ad landevejen * ( det faktum ) at - * uden omsvøb	* henlede opmærksomheden på > * ( situation ) komme ud af kontrol
Without beating about E/A around the bush, he calls attention to the highly <b>volatile / unstable</b> situation from which riots are <b>waiting to `develop</b> .	* ~ henlede opmærksomheden på > * ~ kan udvikle sig / opstå når som helst lure under overfladen * gentagen	* påvirkelig / ustabil ( situation ) * afvisning / benægtelse af ngt.
Despite the nobleman's <b>repeated denials of simmering upheaval</b> , the King knows the nobleman is wrong.	( simrende ) ~ * optaget, anspændt * =	~ ulmende * omvæltning
The King has an <b>intent</b> look in his eyes. Listening <b>intently</b> , he looks <b>intently</b> at his opponent.	in`tent * ~ nægte at se kendsgerningerne i øjnene * det kan ikke benægtes, at der findes ngt. eksistens af ngt. kan ikke benægtes * ~ det kan ikke ( be-) nægtes at -	* omvæltning
<b>10</b> The nobility <b>are in denial</b> , and refuse to admit it, but <b>there's no denying / gainsaying</b> the social unrest.	* ~ nægte at se kendsgerningerne i øjnene * det kan ikke benægtes, at der findes ngt. eksistens af ngt. kan ikke benægtes * ~ det kan ikke ( be-) nægtes at -	* omvæltning * ~ ulme
<b>There's no denying</b> (the fact) that social unrest <b>simmers</b> as the lower classes strongly protest against the <b>denial of</b> their basic human rights.	* nægtelse af ngt. * * ikke kunne modsiges * ... nægtes at -	
It's a fact which <b>cannot</b> be <b>denied / gainsaid</b> . <b>It can't be denied that</b> reforms are needed.	* skule > * skabe en trykkende > * ~ med hænderne i siden * hørt det sidste ord i den sag	* med et foragteligt blik * stemning * dystert / truende af ng. * antyde > * dystert / truende at -
<b>Scowling darkly</b> at the King with a <b>contemptuous look</b> , the nobleman <b>creates a heavy atmosphere</b> .	* skule > * skabe en trykkende > * ~ med hænderne i siden * hørt det sidste ord i den sag	* med et foragteligt blik * stemning * dystert / truende at -
<b>With arms akimbo</b> , he <b>hints darkly that</b> the King is <b>20</b> to blame, and that he has not <b>heard the last of the matter</b> .	* skulende blik / udtryk * ~ gløde > * smile * ~ medhænderne i siden * =	* med et foragteligt blik * stemning * dystert / truende at - * plumpe * ondsindet * onskabsfuldt * grin, smil
Looking at the King <b>with a scowl</b> , the nobleman's his eyes <b>burn darkly</b> in the <b>middle / midst</b> of his <b>heavy features</b> .	* skulende blik / udtryk * ~ gløde > * smile * ~ medhænderne i siden * =	* med et foragteligt blik * stemning * dystert / truende at - * plumpe * ondsindet * onskabsfuldt * grin, smil
The nobleman <b>grins mischievously / malevolently</b> . <b>Arms akimbo</b> , looking at the King with a <b>mischievous grin</b> , the nobleman has a <b>mischievous look</b> in eyes.	* skulende blik / udtryk * ~ gløde > * smile * ~ medhænderne i siden * =	* med et foragteligt blik * stemning * dystert / truende at - * plumpe * ondsindet * onskabsfuldt * grin, smil
His voice is <b>heavy with</b> irony and <b>biting `sarcasm</b> , as he <b>speaks with heavy irony</b> and <b>heavy sarcasm</b> .	* ~ fuld af > * tale med > * skarpsindighed * lys, lyst hoved	* bidende > * ironi / sarkasme * nødvendighed for ngt.
<b>Acuteness</b> is a <b>requisite for</b> success in a discussion with the King, and the nobleman is no great <b>light</b> .	* skarpsindighed * lys, lyst hoved	* nødvendighed for ngt.
<b>30</b> He lacks the <b>requisite qualifications to</b> be a <b>match for</b> the King, and <b>cope with</b> him.	* fornødne * hurtig * - = -	* kvalifikation for at - * ~ hamle op med / kunne måle sig med ng. * ~ hamle op med / klare ng.
As a <b>fast thinker</b> , the King <b>quick-wittedly fastens on(to) / latches on to</b> a weak point in the nobleman's argument.	* hurtig * - = -	* kvikt og intelligent * hæfte sig ved ngt.
When the King's <b>mind alights (up)on</b> a <b>counterargument</b> , the <b>unstable</b> nobleman <b>has a face like thunder</b> .	* ~ tanker * ~ uligevægtig	* lande på ngt. * modargument * ~ se rasende ud
His <b>face darkens</b> and his <b>eyes</b> are <b>full of mischief</b> as his own <b>arguments</b> are difficult to <b>sustain / uphold</b> .	* ansigt > * argument	* formørkes * øjne * fuld af > * onskab * understøtte / opretholde <
There is a murderous <b>light in</b> his <b>eyes</b> . ! <i>Look at page 500!</i>	* ~ blik	* i ngs. øjne
His <b>face is like thunder</b> , and he <b>looks like thunder</b> .	* ansigt * ~ lyse af raseri	* være gal i skralden

478 By **outward appearance** the **revolting nobleman**

is a **heavyweight** but by his **intellectual `make-up**,

he is a **lightweight** having difficulty **formulating** his ideas.

His **lightweight** arguments **bear little** or **no relation(ship)**;

they are not or not much **connected**, and **bear little** or **no**

**relation(ship) to the subject of conversation.**

Most noblemen are unable to **relate to** today's problems,  
as they don't **relate to** the underprivileged classes.

The nobility **disdain** the lower classes

10 and their **contemptuous** manners.

The nobility **disdain** manual labour, and maintain that  
the lower classes were created for it.

They **treat** the lower classes **with disdain**  
and **look at** their manners **with disdain**.

The King **can't relate to** that.

As the nobleman **shows a disdain for** democracy,  
and **shows a contempt for** the King's **outlook ( on society )**,  
he shows a **contempt** and a **disdain for** the King.

**Disdainful of** people who are not noble of birth,  
20 he keeps being **disdainful to** people of the lower classes.

His **contempt for** equality and **disdain for** democracy  
**is reflected in** his **contempt** and **disdain** for the King.

Finding it difficult to **relate** today's problems in his mind,  
the nobleman repeatedly **disdains to** reply.

He even **disdains** the King's offer of a glass of water  
to **clear** his **voice**.

The nobleman doesn't understand that the problems **relate**.

So he doesn't understand how they are **related**,  
and doesn't understand that they are **closely related**.

30 As the nobleman's arguments **relate to** conditions  
ages ago, the King **counters** ( him and his arguments )  
( **with** up-to-date counterarguments ).

The King **counters that** the nobleman  
**shows a staggering contempt for** the **harsh realities**.

' You seem to **be ( living ) in cloud-cuckoo-land (E)**.  
( A: **cloudland** or **`la-la land** ),' the King **counters** ( him )

Still claiming that there's **no warrent for** criticism,  
the nobleman maintains that there's no **warrant for** criticizing  
the **established order**.

\* ydre \* fremtoning \* frastødende \* sværvægter  
legemlig  
\* åndelig \* sammensætning, beskaffenhed  
\* letvægter \* formulere ~ sætte ord på ( ide )  
\* tyndbenet \* have ringe /  
ikke nogen sammenhæng  
\* forbundne \* have ringe / ikke have nogen >  
\* forbindelse til > \* emne ⇔ \* samtale-  
\* relatere / forholde sig til / forstå ngt.  
\* & have forståelse for ng.  
\* foragte ng.  
\* foragtelig  
\* foragte ngt.  
\*  
\* behandle ng. med foragt  
\* betragte ngt. ...  
\* ikke have forståelse for ngt.  
\* vise foragt for ngt.  
\* - = - \* anskuelse, syn ( \* på samfundet )  
~ samfundssyn  
\* ... for ng.  
\* fuld af foragt for ng.  
\* ... overfor ng.  
\* foragt for ngt. \* =  
\* afspejles i ngt. \* ... fo ng.  
\* forbinde ngt.  
\* afstå fra / være for stolt til at -  
\* afslå ngt. af stolt ned  
\* klare stemmen  
\* ~ have forbindelse til hinanden  
\* & være forbundne, hænge sammen  
\* være tæt forbundne, hænge nøje sammen  
have tæt forbindelse til hinanden  
\* forholde sig til ngt.  
\* imødegå ng. / ngt.  
\*  
\* svare igen at -  
\* ... en \* forbløffende \* foragt for \* barsk  
chokerende, rystende  
\* drømmeland / -verden  
\* = \* svare ( ng. ) igen  
\* berettiget grund til ( kritik )  
\* ... til at -  
\* herskende \* orden

<b>479</b> <b>Relating</b> social rest <b>and</b> increased productivity,	* relatere / forbinde ngt. til ngt.
the <b>reasoning behind</b> the King's reforms	* begrundelsen bag ngt.
<b>relates</b> increased production <b>to</b> social welfare and social rest.	* relatere / forbinde ng. og ngt.
According to this reasoning, social rest and welfare	*
<b>relate to</b> democracy.	* ~ være forbundet til ngt.
As the discussion turns into a <b>pitched battle between</b>	* voldsomt ( regulært ) sammenstød mellem ng.
the two, a member of the court <b>comes</b> to the King's <b>rescue</b> .	* komme til > * ngs. undsætning
' It's all right, I <b>can fight my own battles</b> ,' the King	* kunne kæmpe > * sine egne kampe
assures him.	*
<b>10</b> The King <b>has</b> and <b>keeps</b> his <b>wits about</b> him.	* ~ være / holde sig årvågen
He <b>refers to</b> the nobleman's <b>disjointed</b> arguments	* henvise til > * usammenhængende ( argumenter )
<b>as</b> an <b>expression of disjointed</b> reasoning.	* som > * = ( tankegang )
There's a <b>thunderous expression on</b> the nobleman's <b>face</b> .	* rasende udtryk > * i ngs. ansigt
He's <b>talking a load of nonsense</b> : a load of <b>crap</b> , a load of	* sige en bunke > * & sludder * pladder
<b>bull</b> (<shit ), a load of <b>garbage</b> , and a load of <b>rubbish</b> .	vrøvl * bræk
The King just <b>crosses / folds</b> his arms.	* lort * bras * =
<b>Thunderstruck</b> at the nobleman's <b>facial expressions</b> ,	* ~ lægge armene over kors
and having the nobleman's voice <b>thundering in</b> his <b>ears</b> ,	* ~ overrasket og chokeret * ansigts- * udtryk
the King stands silent <b>with</b> his <b>arms crossed / folded</b> .	* tordne * i ørerne
<b>20</b> ' I shall treat your suggestions <b>with</b> the <b>contempt</b>	* med > * armene over kors, ~ korslagte arme
they <b>deserve</b> ,' he assures the nobleman after a while.	* med ( den ) foragt
As the nobleman eventually <b>appreciates that</b> he has been	* ( ngt. ) fortjener
<b>outwitted</b> by the King, a heavy <b>silence falls upon</b> the room.	* blive klar over at -
<b>Outsmarted</b> by the King, the nobleman <b>is at</b> his <b>wits' `end</b> .	* overvundet ved kløgt og snilde * ( trykkende ) stilhed
' Down with the King and his bloody reforms ! ' he finally	taget fusen på * sænke sig over ngt.
<b>thunders disdainfully</b> ( <b>with</b> ) <b>legs akimbo</b> ,	* = * ~ ikke ane sine levende råd
and his <b>loud</b> voice <b>thunderous</b> and unpleasant.	*
Giving the King a look of complete <b>disdain</b> ,	* tordne * foragteligt * skrævende ben
he has a <b>disdainful</b> look on his face,	* høj, kraftig * tordnende, vred
<b>30</b> and has a <b>contemptuous</b> look in his eyes.	* foragt
He even <b>has the cheek / face</b> to laugh <b>haughtily</b> .	* foragteligt
It's clear that the nobleman <b>is</b> both <b>wittingly</b>	* =
and <b>unwittingly in the process of</b> committing <b>lese-majesty</b> .	* have den ( kind / ansigt ) ~ frækhed at - * hovent
<b>As a rare exception</b> , the King's <b>quick wits</b> fail to	* være > * bevidst, vel vidende
get him out of an awkward situation.	overlagt
Contrary to his intention, the haughty nobleman however	* ubevidst, uoverlagt * ~ i gang * ( begå ) majestæts-
only accelerates King's <b>zeal for reform</b> , and thus he becomes	uden at vide det med at - * fornærmelse
the <b>unwitting cause</b> of the <b>speeding up / stepping up</b> ,	* & undtagelsesvis * snarrådighed
and <b>inavitality of</b> reformation.	*
	*
	* iver efter > * reform
	( = reformiver )
	* ~ årsag til ngt. uden at vide det
	* fremskyndelse af ngt. * uafvendelighed af ngt.

**480** As things have **got too heavy**, the King **exceptionally sends** an opponent **packing**.

In a highly **charged atmosphere**, the King **reminds** him,

'No one **twisted** your **arm about** coming to see me,'

There is a **lull in** the conversation and a **loaded silence**.

'The **quicker** you get away from her, the better –

and **never darken** my **door again**,' the king **raps ( out )**.

There's a **startled expression on** the nobleman's **face**.

Anger / fury **smoulders in** his **eyes**.

**10** His **eyes blaze / burn / smoulder with** anger / fury,

**Packing** his **bags**, the nobleman walks **quickly** away.

A **blaze of** anger **flashes across** his **face**.

As he **blazes up**, anger and disappointment **cloud** his **face**.

His **face clouds ( over ) with** anger / fury.

**Barging** his **way out**, **barging** his **way through** the rooms, **down** the stairs and **past** all the servants, **gaping**, **gawping**, and **gawking at** him, he **barges** his **way to** the front door.

His behaves **extraordinarily** for someone in his position.

His sort of behaviour is **beneath contempt**, and the King

**20 can't deny ( that )** this kind of **obduracy alarms** him.

'I'll **warrant ( you )**,' the King assures the bystanders,

'I'll **warrent ( that )** we won't see him again.'

The King **will lose no sleep over** such **obdurate** nobleman.

He **won't lose (any) sleep over** this **lightweight** opponent.

If suppressed and **denied**, emotions can be destructive

**Denying** the King **to** all those without appointments,

the King's secretary has to **deny** many **petitioners**.

Most noblemen think **the time is out of joint**,

while the **visionary** King accuses them of being

**30 intellectual lightweights stuck** in the **Dark Ages**

when it comes to their attitudes to reform and liberalism.

The **Dark Ages** in history is the period in Europe between the end of the Roman Empire (476 AD) and the 10<sup>th</sup> century.

The **glimmer(<ing)s of** an **idea** often come to the king.

So as a **true visionary**, the king is **lighty ears ahead of** most of the nobility with his policies to introduce democracy, and policies to **maintain / sustain** economic **growth**.

**Free ( and fair ) elections** are **essential for**

the **sustenance of ( a ) true** parliamentary **democracy**.

\* blive (for) belastende \* undtagelsesvis

\* ~ sende ng. på porten

\* anspændt \* atmosfære \* påminde ng. stemning

\* ~ tvinge ng. til at -

\* ophold i \* ~ trykkende > \* stilhed

\* hurtigere

\* ~ sæt aldrig dine ben over min dørtærskel igen \* udstøde

\* forbløffet, overrasket \* udtryk \* i ngs. ansigt opskræmt

\* ( vrede / raseri ) ulme > \* i ngs. øjne

\* ~ flamme af ( vrede / raseri )

\* ~ endegyldigt forlade et sted \* hurtigt

\* opflamning af ( vrede ) \* brede sig hastigt henover ( ngs. ansigt )

\* flamme op af vrede \* formørke > \* ngs. ansigt

\* ansigt > \* ~ formørkes af ( vrede / raseri )

\* mase sig vej ud \* ... gennem ngt.

\* ... ned ad ngt \* ... forbi ngt. \* se måbende på ngt.

\* mase sig vej til ngt.

\* usædvanligt, ~ grænseoverskridende

\* under > \* ( foragt ), ~ lavmålet

\* ikke kunne benægte at - \* stædig - / \* forurolige ng. forstokkethed

\* jer garanterer ( dig ) \* omkringstående

\* ... at -

\* miste > \* søvn over ngt. \* stædig ~ ligge søvnløs på grund af ngt. forstokket

\* - = - \* letvægts-

\* fornægte / nægte at anerkende ( følelser )

\* nægte ( foretræde for ) ng. til ng.

\* afvise ng. \* ansøger

\* ~ tiden er af lave

\* visionær

\* letvægter \* sidde fast i > \* den mørke middelalder

\*

\* <<

\*

\* antydningerne / glimtene af > \* ide

\* sand \* visionær person \* lysår foran ng.

\*

\* opretholde > \* vækst

\* frie ( og retfærdige ) \* valg \* væsentlig for >

\* opretholdelse af > \* sandt \* demokrati ( demokratisk land )

**481** A few noblemen who try to **steal** the King's **thunder** are met with a **shake of the head**.

The news about the King's **startling** ideas and initiative **hits** most of the nobility **like a thunderbolt**, and **jolts** them **out of** their **dreams**, and **into action**.

They **are startled** by the King's reforming **zeal**.

It **startles** them **to** know about his **zeal in** reform-making, and his related plans in **startling** contrast to their own.

The King **has ( got ) a load of** friends, except among **10** the nobility where **has ( got ) loads of** (E) enemies.

The nobility **keep ( ) up** and **safeguard** their privileges with great and **inveterate passion** and **fondness**.

He gets a **load** of letters **containing loads and loads of** complaints about his reform plans.

The nobility **are thunderstruck** and **look thunderstruck** as they consider the **progressive** King to **stand in** their **light**, and also **stand in** his **own light**.

The **heated** and **highly charged debate** **revives old hatreds** and **prejudices** that **simmer below** the **surface**.

**20 Reluctant to join hands with far-sighted** advisers, the nobility join hands with **forces of the past**.

Reluctant to join hands with **forces of the future**, looking (up) on the King's reforms **with inveterate** distrust, they **thunder against** the **evils of** liberal reforms.

**Feeling a deep / pure hatred for / of** reform, looking at the reforms **with passionate / profound hatred**, the nobility **feel** nothing but **hatred for / of** the King.

**Filled with an intense, inveterate hatred towards** the King, the nobility look for a **chink in** the king's **armour**; **30 a weakness** or **weak point in** his character, argument etc. that can be used in an attack.

As they **expect** the King **to** make a **big mistake**, the nobility are **waiting for** him **to** make a **serious mistake**.

A **grave mistake** is the opportunity they are **waiting for**.

The nobility **vilify** the King's **attitude as** dangerous, and **for being** an **encouragement of lightning strikes** as a **weapon in** the **class` conflict**, and the **class struggle**

A place or time could be the **tinderbox** that might plunge the country into civil war, and **wipe ( ) out** the nobility.

\* stjæle > ~ opmærksomheden / ngs. ideer fra ng.  
~ tage ordet ud af munden på ng.

\* ~ hovedrysten

\* overraske- / forbløffe- / forskrække- / opskræmmende

\* ramme ng. \* som en tordenkile  
~ komme som et chok for ng.

\* ryste ng. \* ud af > \* drøm \* til handling

\* være overrasket / forbløffet / \* ( reform- ) iver  
forskrækket over >

\* det overrasker etc. ng. at - \* iver i ( reformskabelse )

\* overraskende etc.

\* have en bunke ( venner )

\* have masser af ( fjender )

\* hæge om ngt. \* værne om ngt.

\* forhærdet, indgroet \* lidenskab \* forkærlighed  
uforbedelig /

\* bunke, masse \* indeholde > bunke- /  
massevis

\*

\* være som ramt af lynet  
~ himmelfalden, målløs

\* fremskridtsvenlig \* stå i vejen for ng.

\* ... sig selv

\* ophedet \* ~ stærkt ophidset \* debat \* genoplive >

\* gammel \* had \* fordom \* simre under > \* overfladen  
nag

\* uvillig til at - \* fatte > \* hænder med ng. \* fremsynet  
~ samarbejde med ng.

\* ~ gårdsdagens kræfter / magtfaktor

\* fremtidens ...

\* med indgroet ( mistro )

\* tordne mod ngt. \* ~ skadevirkninger ved ngt.

\* føle > \* dyb / ren > \* had overfor ngt.

\* med > \* lidenskabelig / dybfølt \* had

\* føle > \* had mod ng.

\* fyldt med > \* intens \* indgroet \* had mod ng.

\* sprække i > \* rustning

~ ngs. svage punkt  
\* svaghed \* svagt \* punkt i ngt.

\*

\* forvente ng. ⇔ at - \* stor \* fejl

\* vente på ng. ⇔ at - \* alvorlig \* =

\* graverende \* fejl \* vente på ngt.

\* nedrakke > \* holdning \* som ( farlig )

\* for at være > \* opmuntring til > \* ~ vild \* strejke  
uvarslet

\* våben i > \* klasse- \* konflikt \* ... - \* kamp

\* ( fyrtøj ), ~ krudttønde

\* udslætte ng.

**482** The nobility are **quick to point out social dysfunction(s)**, and **leave the King to take the rap ( for the nobility )**.

They are **too quick** to leave the King to **take the rap for** social unrest even if the **responsibility lies with** the nobility.

The nobility maintain their right to punish members of their staff who are disobedient and **join a strike**.

The nobility don't realize that the King's reforms, abolishing their privileges, are an urgent need to prevent a **class `war**; a merciless **civil `war** and **internecine class warfare** <sup>intê ni-sain</sup> **10** that might led to virtual **wipeout** of the nobility itself.

The King's **inveterate** opponents **thunderously** try to **muzzle his advocates**.

Although many **advocates of** democracy consider the king to **be in their light, the course of events** will one day **prove the opposite**.

**In the course of time, `epoch-making events** will inevitably **happen**, and change the society.

The decisions taken by both parties will influence the **march of events** now and **in the march of time**.

**20** The **progress of events** will one day **prove** the King (**to be**) **right**, and **prove** his **foresight**.

The **sequence of events** will one day **prove** that many noblemen by their **thunderous** aversion to reform (U) **stood in their own light**.

Their reactionary **narrow-minded / blinkered attitudes** to reform **serve only** to **quicken** anti-nobility feelings.

The nobility's **resorting to ingrained confidence in** their **inherited** privileges **lulls** their **anxiety**, and **lull them into a false sense of security**.

**30** Turning a blind eye to the **disturbing, disquieting, worrying**, and **alarming** development of the society, most noblemen are **lulled by** their own **smugness**; too much **self-satisfaction**, (**self-**) **complacency** **self-confidence** and **self-sufficiency**.

**Projecting** their **mind into** the future only just **according to** their **own `lights**, the nobility is **lulled into** believing that **everything in the garden** is **lovely**.

It may be **the lull before the storm**.

\* hurtig til at - \* funktionsforstyrrelse (-r )  
\* overlade ( det til ) ng. at - \* tage skraldet ( for ng. )  
\* for hurtig til at - \* ... for ngt.  
\* ansvar > \* ligge hos ng.  
\*  
\* opsætsig \* deltage / gå med i > \* strejke  
\*  
\* klasse- \* ~ kamp  
\* borger- \* krig \* gensidig ødelæggende \* = \* ~ kamp  
\* udslettelse af ngt.  
\* forhædet \* rasende  
\* give ng. mundkurv på \* fortaler forsvarer  
\* fortaler for / forsvarer af ( demokrati )  
\* være i vejen for ng. \* gang ⇔ \* begivenhedernes  
\* bevise > \* det modsatte  
\* ~ i tidens løb \* epokegørende \* begivenhed  
\* indtræffe  
\*  
\* ~ begivenhedernes gang \* i tidens løb / med tiden  
\* = \* vise ( at ) ng.  
\* have ret \* vise > \* ngs. forudseenhed  
\* rækkefølge af > \* begivenheder \* be-, vise at -  
~ den almindelige udvikling  
\* rasende  
\* ~ stå i vejen for sig selv  
\* snæversynede / ~ = \* holdninger  
\* tjene kun til at - \* forstærke ( følelser )  
\* tilflugt til > \* indgroet \* tiltro til ngt.  
\* nedarvet ( privilegie ) \* bringe / \* bekymring  
dysse ngt. til ro  
\* lulle ng. ind i en falsk følelse af sikkerhed  
\* forstyrrende \* foruroligende  
\* & bekymrende \* alarmerende ( udvikling )  
\* ~ narret af > \* selvtilfreds- / -god- / -behagelighed  
\* =  
\* =  
\* sende > \* ~ tankerne ud i ( fremtiden )  
\* som man har evner / forstand til  
\* narre ng. til at -  
\* ~ der er ingen ko på isen ( så længe rumpen er på land )  
\* ~ stilhed før stormen

**483 Seen in that light, the nobility need to wake up.**

They haven't yet **woken up** to the **seriousness**, or rather, the **gravity of the situation**.

**It's about / high time** the nobility **woke up to the fact that** the times have changed.

Nevertheless, most nobles **stand fast / firm**, or **stick fast**.

Many nobles don't **awake to the fact that** some changes are **inevitable**.

The nobility **need to awaken to** new times.

**10** So as they **need awakening**, they need visionary leaders to **awaken them to the fact** that the times have changed.

The success of emerging parliamentarism should be a **wake-up call to** all **hidebound** noblemen.

Even if the nobles **show () off** their **refined manners**, they often **give way to / betray** their **heavy-handed manners** when it comes to **having** their ( **own** ) **will**.

In order to consolidate their position, the **condescending** nobles often **employ / practise heavy-handed methods of managing** their estates, and **for managing** their businesses.

**20** Clinging on to **the heavy hand** of management, many lords as well as their dispositions are **heavy going**; they are difficult to deal with and difficult to understand.

They often **make heavy weather of** simple doings.

As it is, the nobility heavily profits from the fact that

the **obsolete** administration **procedures** of the current society are discriminating, **clumsy** and **time-consuming**.

**Along with** the problems caused by the privileged nobility, an area that **warrants** attention, consideration etc. is the **want of** enlightenment and education **of** the lower classes.

**30** So with the **reformist** King as the **initiator of** reform, his government **initiates** a **programme of** economic reform, and **on the initiative of** the King, the government **sets / puts in motion** a **rolling programme** of social reform.

As the government **launches** its **programmes to** reform the society, **the wheels of change** are **set / put in motion**.

Each time the speaker **puts forward / tables / proposes** a **motion**, some members of the parliament who have to vote **go through** the **motions ( of voting for the motion )**.

\* set i det lys \* være nødt til at - \* vågne op (fig.)

\* ... til ngt. \* alvor ⇔

\* alvor ⇔ \* situationens

\* det er på tide at - \* vågne op til > \* det faktum /  
/ høje - - - den kendsgerning at -

\* stå fast \* sidde fast

ikke lade sig ændre  
\* ~ blive klar over at -

\* uundgåelig

\* ~ være nødt til at - \* vågne op til ngt.

\* ~ have behov for at - \* vågne op ( fig.)  
opvågning

\* ~ gøre ng. bevidst om / klar over at -

\*

\* advarsel / varsko til ng. \* forstokket

\* vise ngt. frem, vigte sig af ngt. \* forfinede \* manerer

\* ~ ( ufrivilligt ) afsløre > \* hårdhændede ...

\* få sin vilje

\* nedladende

\* anvende / bruge / \* hårdhændet \* metode til at -  
benytte sig af >

\* håndtere ( ejendom ) \* ... ( forretninger )

\* ( den hårde hånd ), ~ hårdhændet ( ledelse )

\* ~ svær at have med at gøre / svær at forstå

\*

\* ~ gøre et stort nummer ud af ngt.

\*

\* forældet \* ( administrations-) procedure

& forvaltnings- ( fremgangs-) måde

\* kluntede \* tids- \* ~ krævende

\*

\* fortjene / behøve ( opmærksomhed, overvejelse )

\* mangel på / behov for ngt. \* for ng.

\* reformvenlig \* initiativtager til / igangsætter af ngt.

\* igangsætte > \* program for ngt.

\* på initiativ af ng. \* reformivrig

\* igangsætte > \* ~ løbende > \* program

\* ... > \* ~ plan om at -

\* ~ forandringens hjul \* være sat i bevægelse

\* fremlægge / fremsætte >

\* ( beslutnings-) forslag

\* gøre sin ufrivillige pligt ( at stemme for forslaget )

## TREASON

**484** At all events, the society will change **radically**

and, in any event – when it comes to the point –

the nobility will lose their **constitutional** power.

After all – when all is said and done – many noblemen will lose their **fortunes** and privileged **precedence**.

Confident, however, that they could keep their power, they will **have a rude awakening**.

All the same, if it comes to the point, the noblemen will just **await a chance to act counter** to the King's wishes, **10** and **counteract** his bad influence.

The **reactionary** noblemen **wait in order to counter**.

They **wait to counter** the King's **initiative** with **counterinitiatives** that don't **go / run counter to** their fundamental interests.

Many **reactionaries** already have plans of how to **retrieve** an **eventual** loss of formal power, of how to **retrieve** their businesses **from** financial ruin and **retrieve** their fortunes.

In the event, the **retrieval** (U) of their power and fortunes **20** **turnes / turned out severely limited**.

Before then, a **strange sequence of events**, however, forces the King to **plunge** the country **into war**.

One nobleman **intentionally betrays** the King.

When he does so, it's quite **intentional**.

Another nobleman, a **deceitful court creep**, has **misled** a young lady by **intriguing with** her, and soon after **broken** her **heart** by **calling () off** their **engagement**.

By **breaking () off** their **engagement**, this **double-tonged, perfidious, and treacherous** lover, **30** has in this way **unintentionally** made the young lady **throw** herself **straight into** the **arms** of a traitor.

That was quite **unintentional**.

The King **suffers a major setback** when some **unforeseen** and **unforeseeable** problems appear.

**Unforeseen** circumstances **subsequent of** a nobleman's **intrigue with** a young lady prove to be a **setback for** the King.

**Unforeseeable** circumstances prove to **represent** a temporary **setback in** the King's reform process.

\* forrædderi

\* i alle tilfælde / al fald \* radikalt  
under alle omstændigheder grundlæggende  
\* i hvert tilfælde \* når det kommer til stykket  
/ fald / alt kommer til alt  
\* forfatnings- / grundlovsmæssig

\* når det kommer til stykket \* =  
/ alt kommer til alt  
\* formue \* forrang

\*

\* få et brat opvågner

\* alligevel \* hvis det kommer til stykket

\* vente på > \* chance / \* handle > \* stik imod ngt.  
anledning til at -  
\* imødegå / modvirke / -arbejde ngt.

\* reaktionær \* vente, med det formål at - \* svare igen  
fremskridsfjendsk

\* = \* imødegå / modsætte sig \* initiativ  
kæmpe imod >

\* modinitiativ \* gå imod ngt.

\*

\* reaktionær / fremskridsfjendsk person

\* genvinde / få ngt. tilbage \* eventuel, mulig  
redde / genopbygge ngt. endelig, sluttelig  
\* ... fra ngt.

\* <<

\* ~ da det kommer / kom til stykket \* generhvervelse

\* viser sig / \* stærkt / yderst begrænset  
viste sig at være -

\* inden da \* besynderlig \* række af begivenheder

\* kaste ng. ud i krig

\* forsættigt, med vilje \* forråde ng.

\* tilsigtet

\* bedragerisk, troløs \* hof- \* kryb  
~ snog

\* føre ng. på afveje \* have en hemmelig  
affære med ng.

\* knuse ngs. hjerte \* hæve > \* forlovelse

\* bryde > \* =

\* tvetunget, ~ bedragerisk \* bedragerisk \* =

\* uforsættigt, utilsigtet \* kaste / skubbe ng. >

\* lige i armene på ng.

\* <<

\* lide et > \* ~ alvorligt \* tilbageslag

\* uforudsete > \* uforudsigelige ( problemer )

\* uforudsete ( omstændigheder )

\* hemmelig affære med ng. \* tilbageslag for ng.

\* uforudsigelige ( omstændigheder ) \* ~ stå for >

\* tilbageslag i ngt.

**485** The nobility want to **marginalize** the King.

<sup>ˈma-dʒɪnəlaɪz</sup>

Although he is **heavy** **hitter** (eA) they **work at**

**sidelining** the King as they don't want him to play a role as a political **heavyweight**.

Although most of the nobility are political **lightweights**, they work on **pushing** the King **to the sidelines** as they want him only to watch **from the sidelines** while they **cling on to power** or **struggle for** more.

Many aristocrats **counterwork in the open**, **10** and some openly **malign** the King in the press.

**Having an unremitting war on with** the King, some nobles **unremittingly counter** and **counterwork** the King

**Counteracting** and **counterworking** the King's reforms, they want to **counterbalance** and **counterpoise** his reforms.

**Submitting counterproposals** and **counterpropositions**, they want their **counteraction** and **counterwork** to **act as a counterbalance** to liberal reforms.

In spite of all the nobility's **counterpressure**, all their **counterforces** and **countermeasures**, **20** their **counterstatements** and **counterdeclarations**, **countermanifestos** and **counterpropaganda**, **counterdemonstrations** and **counterclaims**, the **counteractive** noblemen's **counterviews** as well as the **countertendencies** of the rest of the society are too weak to **countervail** the King's reforms.

**In vain** the **counteractors** of the nobility **counterclaim** a **counterreformation**.

As all **counterreforms** are **watered ( ) down**, they are not able to **countercheck** the liberal reforms.

**30** The liberal reforms **kindle** much **interest** and **enthusiasm** among academic **nonrevolutionary social reformers**.

**When all is said and done**, the King's reforms are popular with the **mass of ( the ) citizens / ( the ) people**.

**After all**, the King's reforms are popular with the **masses**.

The **epidemic craze / fad for** reform and democracy that proves to be more that a **passing craze / fad** is a **shot in the arm** for the King.

**Burning with a desire** to reform the society, the King is **burning to** have his reforms passed.

\* marginalisere ng. / køre ng. ud på et sidespor

\* arbejde på / tumle med at -

\* <<

\* sværvægter

\* letvægter

\* køre ng. ud på et sidespor

\* fra sidelinien

\* klynge sig til > \* magten \* kæmpe for ngt.

\* lave modarbejde \* ~ åbenlyst  
være i opposition

\* skade / bagtale / tale ondt om ng.

\* ~ ligge i > \* uophørlig > \* krig med ng.

\* uophørligt \* opponere ( imod ng.) \* modarbejde ng.  
ihærdigt modarbejde ( ng.)

\* ... ngt. \* =

\* afbalancere ngt. / danne modvægt mod ngt.

\* fremsætte > \* modforslag \* =

\* modstand / -virken / -arbejdning \* =

\* virke som > \* modvægt til ngt.

\* modtryk

\* modkræfter \* modforholdsregler

\* moderklæring \* moderklæring

\* modmanifest \* modpropagande

\* moddemonstration \* modkrav

\* modarbejdende \* modanskuelser

\* modtendenser

\* opveje / modvirke ngt.

\* forgæves \* modarbejder \* stille modkrav om ngt.

\* modreformation

\* modreform \* udvande <

\* modvirke ngt.

\* vække > \* interesse \* entusiasme

\* ikke revolutionære \* samfunds- \* reformator

\* når alt kommer til alt, i sidste ende

\* hovedparten af > \* borgere \* folk

\* << \* masserne

\* ~ hastigt bredende sig \* kortvarig interesse for ngt.

\* forbigående, flygtig \* modelune, grille

\* ~ saltvandsindsprøjtning for ng.

\* ( brænde ), ~ optændt af > \* ønske

\* brænde efter at -

**486 Circumstances**, however, **conspire against** the King and his reforms, so the King and his reforms **lose popularity**.

A **chain of events conspires to** make the political situation very **tense**.

There's a **conspiracy of silence** within the nobility **about** the popularity of King's reforms with the masses.

**In revolt over** the King and his reforms, members of the **conspiratorial** opposition kênspirê`tâ~riêl **have private talks to form a conspiracy**. kên`spirêsi  
**10** In public, their voices become low and **conspiratorial** as they **whisper** ( something ) **conspiratorially** ( **to** each other ) in a **conspiratorial tone**.

Having **secret talks**, and having a **malign** influence upon the **weaker brethren** (pl.), a small **core** of opponents **form a conspiracy against** the King and his reforms.

**Arriving at an agreement**, they form a **conspiracy to oppose** ( the King ) **reforming** the society.

**Making a private / secret agreement**, the **conspirators** -`spi - **conspire against** the King and his reforms.

**20** They **conspire to** bitterly oppose the King's reforms.

**Hatching schemes** and **making back-room deals**, they **conspire together to** oppose the King.

Although the King **keeps** his opponents **at arm's length**, a **traitor** at the King's court **secretly consorts with** some **hard-core** conspirators.

Having **joined** the conspiracy to **overthrow** the King, he **conspires with** a **hard-core of fellow conspirators**.

**Conspiring with** them **to revolt against** the King, ri`vêult he **plots with** them **to overthrow** the King.

**30** Writing **vicious open letters** to the King, the **plotters** have **opened war on** him and his position.

Secretly **plotting against** the King, the hard-core conspirators **plot** the King's **overthrow**

**Hatching a plot** ( **against** the King ), the hard core even **hatch a plot to assassinate** the King.

The **treacherous** conspirators **plot to assassinate** the King.

**At all events**, any **appearance before** the **public** by the King or his family **warrants** a large police presence.

\* omstændighederne \* konspirere / sværge sig sammen imod ng&t.  
\* miste > \* popularitet  
\* kæde af > \* begivenheder \* ... for at -  
\* ( høj-) spændt  
\* ~ stiltiende enighed om fortielse >  
\* omkring ngt.  
\* i oprørstilstand over ngt.  
\* konspiratorisk, sammensværgelserisk  
\* føre underhåndssamtale \* danne > \* konspiration sammensværgelse  
\* <<  
\* hviske ( ngt.) \* <<<  
\* ( til ng.) \* <<<<  
\* & underhåndssamtale \* skadelig, ondartet  
\* svagere \* ( ånds-) brødre \* kerne af ng. & ubefæstede sjæle  
\* danne > \* konspiration / sammensværgelse rettet mod ng&t.  
\* nå til > \* aftale \* sammensværgelse >  
\* for at - \* modsætte sig ( ng. ⇔ at - ) \* reformere ngt.  
\* lave > \* ~ underhåndsaftale \* sammensvoren  
\* konspirere / sværge sig sammen imod ng&t.  
\* sværge sig sammen for at -  
\* udklække > \* skumle planer \* lave > \* ~ underhåndss- ~ lave rævekager aftaler  
\* konspirere / sværge sig sammen for at -  
\* holde ng. på tilbørlig afstand / tre skridt fra livet  
\* forræder \* hemmeligt \* omgås / pleje omgang med ng.  
\* ( hårde kerne ) ~ forhærdet  
\* slutte sig til ng. \* vælte ng.  
\* konspirere med > \* hård kerne af > \* medsammen-svorne  
\* sværge sig sammen \* gøre oprør mod ng. med ng. for at -  
\* lægge skumle planer med ng. for at - \* vælte ng.  
\* skrive > \* vrede, hadefulde \* åbne breve til ng.  
\* komplotmager \* indlede en krig / de sammensvorne kamp mod ng&t.  
\* lægge planer rettet mod ng.  
\* lægge skumle planer for / \* omstyrtelse pønse på ngt. fald  
\* udklække > \* komplot \* rettet mod ng. skummel plan  
\* << \* med det formål at - \* snigmyrde ng.  
\* lands- / \* planlægge på skummel vis at - kongeforrædderisk  
\* unde alle \* fremtræden / \* for offentligheden omstændigheder visen sig >  
\* berettigede / nødvendiggøre ngt.

<b>487</b> There's often a <b>conspiracy of silence surrounding people</b> ( having <b>ended</b> ) in the nobility's <b>pocket</b> .	* ~ en mur af >	* tavshed	* ~ omkring >
The police are constantly on their search for a <b>missing link</b> in their attempts to <b>foil</b> a possible <b>assassination plot</b> by <b>detecting</b> and <b>disclosing</b> / <b>uncovering</b> conspiracies.	* folk	* ( komme )	* ~ i lommen på ng.
In order to <b>clear</b> her <b>conscience</b> , a <b>conspirator</b> , however, <b>startlingly reveals</b> a <b>conspiratorial secret</b> .	* manglende	* ( informations- ) led / brik	
The secret was a too <b>heavy load</b> for the <b>traitress to carry</b> , and her <b>heart</b> is <b>loaded with regret</b> .	* forhindre ngt.	* mord-	* komplot sammensværgelse
<b>10</b> First she has <b>betrayed</b> her mother's <b>trust</b> .	* opdage >	* afdække / -sløre ( sammensværgelse )	
Then she has <b>betrayed</b> the King <b>to</b> the conspiracy.	* rense sin samvittighed	* sammensvoren kvinde	
Having <b>betrayed</b> state secrets <b>to</b> the <b>traitorous</b> conspiracy, she has <b>betrayed</b> the King and her country.	* overraskende	* afsløre >	* konspiratorisk * hemmelighed
She <b>regrets that</b> her <b>broken heart</b> and wounded pride made her <b>betray</b> her <b>beliefs</b> .	* tung byrde for ng. ⇔ at bære	* forræderinde	
<b>It is to be regretted that</b> people's hurt feelings make them <b>betray</b> their <b>ideals</b> .	* hjerte	* tynget af >	* fortrydelse sorg, ærgrelse
<b>It is regrettable that</b> people's hurt pride makes them <b>disloyal to</b> their <b>ideals</b> .	* svigte ngs. tillid		
<b>20</b> <b>Regretting how</b> she has <b>betrayed</b> her <b>principles</b> , she <b>regretted what</b> she had done.	* forråde ng. til ng.		
Her <b>traitorous</b> and <b>treasonable / treasonous</b> misdeeds <b>hung / lay heavy on</b> her.	* afsløre / røbe ngt. til ng.	* forræderisk	
The <b>betrayal of</b> the King <b>hung / lay heavy on</b> her <b>heart</b> , and the <b>betrayal of</b> her ideals <b>hung / lay heavy on</b> her <b>conscience</b> .	* forråde ng.		
The <b>betrayal</b> had begun to feel sharp <b>twinges of regret</b> .	* fortryde at -	* ~ hjertesorg	
Feeling <b>pangs of regret</b> she began to realize that her practice didn't <b>consort with</b> her conscience.	* forråde / svigte	* & det man tror på	
<b>30</b> Realizing the <b>burdensome consequences of</b> ( <b>having</b> ) a <b>bad / guilty conscience</b> , and of saying anything that would make her <b>betray herself</b> , she soon began to <b>regret</b> her participation <b>in conspiracy</b> .	* det er beklageligt at -		
She <b>deeply regretted</b> her decision to <b>join</b> the conspiracy.	* svigte sine idealer		
She <b>greatly regretted</b> joining the conspirators.	* <<		
So the conspirator decided to <b>betray</b> the conspiracy, and <b>inform on / against</b> her fellow conspirators.	* illoyal mod >	* ( sine ) idealer	
' If you don't do it now, you'll <b>only regret it</b> – if you don't do it, you'll <b>live to regret it</b> ,' she'd thought.	* angre / fortryde hvordan -	* svigte sine principper	
	* ... hvad -		
	* forræderiske	* lands / konge - ... ( ugeringer )	
	* hvile tungt på ng.		
	* forræderi mod ng.	* tynge ngs. hjerte	
	* svigt overfor ( idealer )	* ... ngs. >	
	* samvittighed		
	* forræder	* anfald ( smertende stik ) af anger	
	* =		
	* kunne følges / harmonere med ( samvillighed )		
	* byrdefuld	* konsekvens / følge af ( at ) ngt.	
	* ( have ) dårlig samvittighed		
	* afsløre sig		
	* fortryde ngt.	* i sammensværgning	
	* inderligt angre / fortryde ngt.	* deltage i ngt.	
	* voldsomt	* ... at -	* slutte sig til ng.
	* afsløre / røbe ngt.		
	* informere om / ~ angive ng.		
	* bare ville fortryde det		
	* ~ fortryde / ærgre sig over ngt. resten af livet		

488 Her voice <b>betrays</b> the anxiety she's trying to hide	* afsløre ngt.
when she <b>betrays</b> her co-conspirators <b>to</b> the King.	* afsløre ng. overfor / røbe ng. til ng.
Her <b>trembling</b> voice <b>betrays the fact that</b>	* skælvende ( stemme * ... ( det faktum /
joining the conspiracy was a <b>regrettable</b> decision:	* fortrydelig den kendsgerning ) at -
a stupid thing to do which she <b>bitterly regrets</b> .	* bittert angre / fortryde ngt.
<b>Making</b> an <b>object apology</b> with a <b>regretful</b> look in her eyes,	* give > * ydmyg * undskyldning * angerfuld
she expresses her <b>regret at</b> her <b>intended</b> action as well as	* anger over ngt. fuld af fortrydelse
her <b>regret at</b> the <b>unintended</b> consequences of her actions.	* ... for ngt. * påtænkt
As much as she <b>regrets</b> ever having betrayed the King,	* fortryde at - * tilsigtet
<b>10</b> she has / feels no <b>regrets about</b> betraying the conspiracy.	* være ked af at - * utilsigtet
Sounding <b>genuinely regretful</b> , she apologizes <b>regretfully</b> .	* oprigtigt * angerfuld * fuld af ...
Nevertheless, the traitress <b>has a ( heavy ) cross to bear</b> .	* ... et ( tungt ) kors at bære
Betraying the King is her <b>greatest regret</b> .	* største fortrydelse ~ det man mest fortryder
Telling the King the <b>startling</b> truth, she <b>unburdens her mind</b>	* overraskende * lette sit sind
as she <b>unburdens her heart</b> , and <b>unburdens</b> herself.	* forbløffende / sin samvittighed * =
<b>Imploring</b> the King's forgiveness, she <b>slumps to her knees</b> .	* trygle ng. om ngt. * ~ falde på > * knæ
The traitress hopes to <b>retrieve her honour</b> .	* genvinde sin ære ~ rehabiliter sig
Hoping for the <b>retrieval of her honour</b> ,	* rehabilitering
she hopes her <b>character</b> is not <b>beyond retrieval</b> .	* skudsmål * hinsides genoprettelse
<b>20</b> At least she hopes for a fairly <b>light punishment</b> .	rygte umulig at genvinde, uigenkaldelig * straf
Thanks to her <b>eventual</b> loyalty to the King,	* ~ mild
her <b>regretful</b> character is not <b>past retrieval</b> .	* endelig, sluttelig i sidste ende
Her <b>confession takes a load off her mind</b> .	* fuld af ærgrelse / sorg * < =
<b>It is a load off her mind</b> .	* fortrydelse * tilståelse * ~ få en sten til at falde fra ngs. hjerte
A tear <b>traces a path</b> down her cheek.	* =
Are tears a woman's <b>weapon</b> ?	* ~ bane sig vej
The <b>faintest trace of</b> a smile seems to appear on her face.	* våben
Her <b>heart lightens</b> as she <b>lightens her conscience</b> .	* svagest * spor / antydning af ngt.
She admits she <b>intended</b> revenge <b>acting in collusion with</b>	* ~ blive lettere om hjertet * lette > * sin samvittighed
<b>30</b> the traitor but she never <b>intended</b> things <b>to</b> turn out	* påtænke / * handle i > * ledtog med ng.
the way they did; things turned out <b>in a way</b> never <b>intended</b> .	* være opsat på ngt. ( ~ hemmeligt samarbejde ) * ... ngt ⇔ at ( skulle ) -
Merely <b>intending</b> her actions <b>as</b> a revenge towards	* på en måde * påtænkt
the court creep, she had then been <b>led astray by</b> the traitor.	* påtænke ngt. som ngt.
The King has <b>taken a load off her mind</b> ,	* ledt på afveje af ng.
and again she feels free to <b>join in</b> a conversation.	* ~ vælte en sten fra ngs. hjerte
The King <b>bears the penitent</b> traitress <b>no malice</b> .	* deltage i ngt.
As he <b>reforms</b> her, and she <b>reforms</b> , a <b>burden lifts</b> .	* ~ ikke bære > * angerfuld * nag til ng.
She never <b>regrets</b> her decision to inform the King,	* ~ få ng. til at * forbedre sig * ~ en sten falder
and he'll never know her to <b>betray a confidence</b> .	* forbedre sig fra ngs. hjerte * fortryde ngt.
	* afsløre / røbe > * fortrolighed

<b>489</b> Having <b>taught</b> the naive and <b>gullible</b> traitress <b>a lesson</b>	* ~ give ng. >	* godtroende nem at narre	* en lærestreg
by <b>pointing out</b> her naivety <b>to</b> her, and <b>expostulated with</b> her	* påpege ngt. overfor ng.	* protestere overfor ng. >	
<b>about</b> her <b>gullibility</b> , the King <b>makes</b> her a <b>counteroffer</b> .	* ~ foreholde ng. ngt. >	* ~ bebrejde ng. ( ngt.)	
	* vedr. >	* godtroenhed	* give ng. > * modtilbud
Accepting the King's <b>expostulation</b> , the young lady	* indsigelse, bebrejdelse		
agrees in acting as an <b>informant / informer</b> so the King	protest		
will be able to <b>countercheck</b> information on his enemies	* meddeler, anmelder,		
in order to <b>keep a countercheck on</b> his information.	angiver stikker		
	* efterkontrollere ngt.		
<b>Intrigued by</b> the young lady and <b>by</b> her <b>intriguing</b> story,	* holde >		* genkontrol modforholdsregel
the King takes care to <b>lay a fast hold on</b> the young lady,	* fascineret af ng. / ngt.		* fængslende ( historie )
<b>10</b> and <b>keep a watchful eye on</b> the <b>intriguing</b> young lady	* ~ holde ng. i stramme tøjler		
until he's convinced that she's <b>reliable</b> and <b>trustworthy</b> .	* holde et vågent øje med ng.		* fascinerende
	* pålidelig		* =
Convinced of her <b>reliability</b> and <b>trustworthiness</b> ,	til at stole på		
the King <b>relies heavily on</b> the former traitress,	* pålidelighed		
now acting as a <b>double-dealer</b> and a <b>double-crosser</b> .	* stole meget på ng.		
Having regained her <b>self-reliance</b> , the young lady	* dobbeltspiller		* dobbeltbedrager -snyder / -svindler
has become an independent and <b>self-reliant</b> person.	* selvtilid		
	* selvtilidsfuld		
As she proves to be <b>reliable</b> supporter, and a <b>steadfast</b>	* pålidelig ( støtte )		* ~ trofast >
and <b>reliable</b> friend, they become <b>fast friends</b> .	~ til at stole på		
	* = ( ven )		* ~ fine / svorne venner
The King <b>relies on</b> his informer <b>for</b> information.	* være afhængig af ng.		
<b>20</b> He <b>relies on</b> her telling / <b>to</b> tell the truth.	* stole på / være afhængig af ng. ⇔ at -		
He <b>relies on</b> her <b>to</b> hear the truth.	* ... ng. ⇔ at -		
As his informer can be <b>relied on to</b> keep their secret,	* stole på ng. ⇔ at -		
the King <b>relies on</b> secret information coming <b>from</b> his informer.	* være afhængig ngt. ⇔ at -		
As she <b>double-crosses</b> the conspirators, the King <b>relies on</b>	* dobbeltbedarge /		* stole på >
her <b>double-cross (C) to</b> lead to the arrest of the conspirators.	-snyde / -svindle ng.		
	* dobbeltbedrag		* ngt. ⇔ at -
As his information comes from a <b>reliable source</b> ,	-snyd / .svindel		
the King is <b>reliably informed about</b> the conspiracy.	* pålidelig		* kilde
	* pålideligt		* informeret om ngt.
The information from his <b>double-dealer casts / throws</b>	* dobbeltspiller		* kaste / ~ så >
<b>doubt on</b> some noblemen's motives and <b>reliability</b> .	* tvivl om >		* pålidelighed
<b>30</b> The King <b>relies heavily (up)on</b> his informer's <b>secrecy</b> .	* stole afgørende på /		* diskretion
<b>Heavily reliant (up)on</b> her and her <b>double-dealing (U)</b>	sætte sin lid til >		
<b>the other way round</b> , he is and <b>heavily dependent (up)on</b>	* dybt afhængig af ng. / ngt.		* dobbeltspil
her and her <b>counterchecks</b> .	* den modsatte vej		* ... af afhængig af ng. / ngt.
	* efter-, dobbeltkontrol		
In order to <b>make a countermove</b> , the King and his informer	* lave >		* modtræk
start to <b>countermove</b> .	* ~ lave modtræk		
Eager to <b>counterplot</b> a few adherents of the King	* lægge modplaner, modsammensværgelse sig		
<b>form a counterplot</b> .	* danne		* modsammensværgelse
Some <b>sources of information</b> are totally <b>unreliable</b> .	* kilde til >	* information	* upålidelig
	~ informationskilde		

**490 Shrouding his measures in secrecy, the King keeps**

his knowledge of the **treachery secret from** everybody.

Only **as regards** the Queen, he feels obliged to

**go so far as to lift a corner of the veil of secrecy.**

So one night when he **comes to bed** and she's still **awake**,  
he **touches lightly on** the problem.

**Intending ( to stage ) an uprising / a rebellion / a revolt**  
( **against** the King ), the **rebellious** conspirators

( **fully** ) **intend to rebel / revolt ( against** the King ).

**10** As the **`rebels ( fully ) intend (E&)** rebelling / revolting,

the **intended** purpose of their plans is **rebellion / revolt.**

The **rebellious** nobles **have every intention of** rebelling.

Conspiring **with intent to rise (up) against** the King,  
the rebels conspire **with the intention of toppling** the King.

So the rebellion **is intended to bring ( ) down** the King  
as it **is** the conspirators' **intention to overthrow** the King.

It is their **intention that** the rebellion will spread.

**It is intended that** other manors **rise in rebellion / revolt**  
( **against** the King and his reforms ).

**20** The conspirators **intend** other nobles **to join** the rebellion.

The conspirators **intend that** each of them are going to  
**lead** a local **rebellion, starting from** each of their manors.

**Confident that** all enemies of the King will **rise in revolt**,  
the noblemen are determined to **lead** a local **revolt.**

They **have every intention of being** in the head of a revolt.

It **is** their **intention to be** in the head of a local revolt.

**Intent (adj.) (up)on regicide**, the head of the conspiracy is,  
however, **intent (up)on committing regicide** one way  
or the other whenever the unusual **circumstances**

**30 offer** the **opportunity to** assassinate the King.

The King might become the **intended victim of**  
a **staged accident** whenever the **opportunity offered itself.**

So **in full assurance that** a **spreading revolt** will lead to  
**revolutionary uprisings**, the **warlords** are intent (up)on  
**staging** an **extensive revolt against** the King.

**In the confident assurance that growing revolt**  
will **cause a revolution**, the **revolutionary** noblemen  
**rise (up) / rebel / revolt to start a revolution.**

- \* indhulle > \* dispositioner \* i hemmelighed \* holde > foranstaltninger ~ mørklægge <
- \* ( viden om ) forrædderi \* hemmeligt for ng. & ~ fortie ngt. for ng.
- \* hvad angår, & overfor ng.
- \* gå så vidt som til at - \* løfte en flig af hemmelighedens slør
- \* komme i seng \* vågen
- \* ~ berøre ( problem ) flygtigt
- \* have > i sinde / påtænke > \* oprør, opstand ( at iscenesætte / anstifte > )
- \* ( mod ng. ) \* oprørske
- \* ( helt og aldeles ) påtænke / \* gøre oprør have til hensigt at - ( mod ng. )
- \* - = -
- \* påtænkt / tiltænkt ( formål ) \* oprør / opstand
- \* oprørske \* have allehånde hensigter om at -
- \* i den hensigt at - \* rejse sig imod ng.
- \* med det formål / den hensigt at - \* vælte ng.
- \* være tiltænkt det formål at - \* vælte ng.
- \* være ngs. hensigt at - \* gøre oprør mod ng.
- \* hensigt at -
- \* påtænkt / meningen at - \* rejse sig > \* i oprør / opstand \* mod ng. / ngt.
- \* påtænke ng. ⇔ at -
- \* påtænke at -
- \* lede > \* oprør \* begynde / ~ udgå fra ( sted ) opstand
- \* overbevist om at - \* rejse sig > \* i oprør / opstand
- \* lede > \* =
- \* have allehånde hensigter om at -
- \* være ngs. hensigt at -
- \* opsat på ngt. \* kongemord
- \* ... at -
- \* omstændighederne
- \* frembyder > \* muligheden for at -
- \* påtænkt \* offer for >
- \* fingeret \* ulykke \* lejligheden > \* frembyde sig
- \* i sikker forvisning om \* & omsiggribende
- \* revolutionær opstand \* oprørske krigsherre
- \* iscenesætte > \* omfattende \* opstand mod ng.
- \* i sikker forvisning om at - \* voksende \* opstand
- \* forårsage > \* revolution \* revolutionær omvæltning
- \* ~ gøre opstand \* starte > \* revolution

<b>491</b> The <b>revolutionaries aim at</b> getting rid of the King,	* revolutionær	* sigte efter / mod at -
and <b>aim to</b> change the political system.	* - = -	
In the head of a <b>revolutionary</b> aristocratic <b>movement</b> ,	* revolutionær	* bevægelse
the revolutionary leaders have plans to <b>form a junta</b> ,	* danne >	* junta
a military aristocratic government to control the country.	*	
Even if they have tried to <b>keep</b> their <b>intentions dark secret</b> ,	* holde >	* hensigter * ~ dybt * hemmelige
the King has, however, <b>stolen a march from</b> the rebels.	* ~ komme ng. i forkøbet	
With <b>consummate</b> skill, <b>in deepest secrecy</b> ,	* fuldendt ( dygtighed )	* i dybeste / al hemmelighed i det skjulte
the King has <b>infiltrated</b> his spies <b>into</b> the traitor's <b>haunts</b> .	* ~ få ng. til at infiltrere >	* tilholdssted
<b>10</b> Having <b>infiltrated into</b> the revolutionary <b>circles</b> ,	* ~ smyge sig ind i >	* kredse
the <b>infiltrators</b> have <b>infiltrated</b> the revolutionary movement.	* " infiltrator "	* infiltrere ngt.
Thanks to the <b>infiltration</b> , troops loyal to the King are	*	
prepared to <b>suppress, quash</b> and <b>crush</b> the <b>rebellion</b> (etc.).	* slå > ned / knuse >	* oprør, opstand
Before the conspirators could reach their manors	*	
most of them were spotted by the King's men and arrested.	*	
Sent out to <b>put ( ) down</b> the <b>revolt</b> , the royal troops	* slå > ned	* oprør, opstand
succed in <b>putting</b> an <b>end to</b> the <b>uprising</b> within a few days.	* gøre en ende på >	* =
The country has been <b>heading towards</b> revolution.	* styre / have kurs mod ( revolution )	
It has been a country <b>on the brink of</b> revolution.	* være på randen af ( = )	
<b>20</b> In case of an aristocratic revolution,	*	
the King has <b>contemplated</b> a <b>counterrevolution</b>	* påtænke / udtænke ngt.	* kontra-, modrevolution
The head conspirator has, however, <b>smelled a rat</b> .	* lugte >	* rotte
So he <b>flees</b> through a <b>secret door</b> .	* hemmelig	* dør
Having <b>fled</b> through a <b>secret passage</b> ,	* flygte	* hemmelig * passage ~ løngang
the traitor <b>disappears / vanishes without</b> (a) <b>trace</b> .	* forsvinde	* ~ sporløst
At first when the <b>secret police</b> come for his arrest,	* hemmelig	* politi
they are unable to <b>find</b> any <b>trace</b> (U) of the traitor,	* finde >	* ( noget som helst ) spor af ng.
or <b>discover</b> any <b>traces of</b> the crime.	* opdage >	* ( nogen ) spor af ngt.
There's <b>no trace of</b> the traitor.	* intet ...	
<b>30</b> Though a criminal usually <b>leaves traces of</b> the crime,	* efterlade spor om ngt.	
every <b>trace of</b> the traitor and <b>all trace(s)</b> of the crime	* ... efter ng. / ngt.	
have been <b>effaced</b> .	* fjerne ngt. / få ngt. til at forsvinde	
Having <b>covered</b> his <b>tracks</b> , the <b>fugitive from</b> justice	* skjule >	* sine spor * flugtperson fra ngt. / ng.
and the police seems <b>over the hills and far away</b> .	* ~ over alle bjerge	
People are <b>called (up)on</b> to <b>denounce</b> the traitor	* opfordre ng. til at -	* angive ng. >
<b>to</b> the police, but although the police do all they can	* til ( politiet )	
<b>to trace</b> the <b>subversive fugitive</b> , they have little hope of	* opspore ng.	* samfundsomvæltende * flugtperson
<b>tracing</b> the <b>fugitive subversive at the present time</b> .	* spore ng. * flygtende * samfundsomvælter * for nu- / nærværende	

<b>492 It revolts</b> most people <b>to</b> hear rumours of <b>treachery</b> .	* oprøre ng. at -	* ( lands- / konge-) forræderi svig, løftebrud, troløshed
When the conspiracy <b>comes to light</b> , the town is <b>in revolt</b> .	* komme for dagen / for en dag	* i oprør
The rumours of <b>treason revolt</b> most people.	* ( lands- / konge- ) etc.	* oprøre ng.
They are <b>revolted by</b> the rumours of ( <b>high</b> ) <b>treason</b> .	* oprørt over	* høj- * forrædderi
<b>Revolt</b> ing at <b>betrayal</b> , most people revolt at the <b>betrayal</b> .	* føle afsky over ngt.	* forræderi etc. * =
Most people <b>condemn</b> the conspirators <b>as traitors to</b>	* fordømme ng. som ngt.	* forræder mod ngt.
the country and <b>traitors to</b> the King.	* ... mod ng.	
The town <b>is up in arms about</b> the <b>revolt</b> ing news.	* i oprør over ngt.	* oprørende ( nyheder )
The rumours of a <b>traitorous</b> and <b>treacherous</b> conspiracy	* forrædderisk, svigefuld	* =
<b>10 produce</b> a <b>wave of</b> anger and <b>revulsion against</b>	upålidelig, bedragerisk	
the <b>betrayers</b> and their <b>traitorous infamy</b> .	* ~ fremkalde > * bølge af ( vrede )	* afsky mod ngt.
The rumours of an <b>intended regicide fill</b> people <b>with</b>	* forræder	* forræderisk * skændig karakter / opførsel
<b>revulsion against</b> the <b>cowardly</b> and <b>traitorous plotters</b> .	* påtænkt	* kongemord * fylde ng. med > / - morder
<b>The march of</b> civilization <b>brings along</b> moral principles	* afsky for ng.	* kujonagtig * forræderisk * komplot-mager
that <b>march with</b> different groups of people.	* ~ udvikling	* føre ngt. med sig
Most people <b>feel revulsion from</b> acts of violence.	* harmonere med ng.	
<b>Feeling a revulsion against</b> assassination,	* føle afsky ( over-) for / væmmelse ved ngt.	
most citizens <b>feel a deep sense of revulsion at regicide</b> .	* =	
Having <b>intrigued</b> ( <b>with</b> the traitress ) ( <b>against</b> the King ),	* =	* kongemord
<b>20 highly trusted</b> noblemen have, among other <b>infamies</b> ,	* intrigere	* sammen med ng. * mod ng.
operated <b>in collusion with</b> the traitress.	* højt	* betroet * skændselsgerning
The <b>collusion between</b> trusted noblemen	* i hemmelig forståelse / samarbejde >	* med ng.
and the <b>infamous</b> traitress will <b>remain / live in infamy</b> .	* - - - mellem ng.	
Several trusted noblemen have <b>colluded</b> .	* infam, berygtet	* forblive / leve / * i skændsel ~ blive husket
They have <b>colluded in</b> the <b>outrageous</b> conspiracy.	* arbejde hemmeligt sammen	
They have <b>colluded to</b> overthrow the King.	* ... i ngt.	* skændig
They have <b>colluded in</b> rebelling against the King.	* ... for at -	
They have <b>colluded with</b> the traitor.	* ... om at -	
They have <b>colluded with</b> the traitor <b>in</b> the conspiracy.	* & være i ledtog / spille under dække med ng.	
<b>30</b> They have <b>colluded with</b> the traitor <b>to</b> overthrow the King.	* ... med ng. i ngt.	
They have <b>colluded with</b> him <b>in</b> rebelling against the King,	* ... med ng. for at -	
and, <b>in an act of betrayal</b> , <b>turned traitors</b> themselves.	* ... med ng. om at -	
Although his <b>mind rebels</b> , these people's <b>infamous</b> acts	* i > * handling af > * forræderi * blive > * forræder ( selv )	
have taught the King to be <b>oversuspicious of</b> everybody.	* gøre modstand	* infam, modbydelig
He <b>denies</b> quicker action could have <b>averted</b> the revolt.	* overmistænksom overfor ng.	
' I <b>deny that</b> I could have <b>headed</b> ( ) <b>off subversive</b> activity	* benægte at -	* afværge / forhindre ngt.
and <b>prevented</b> the rebellion,' the King <b>expostulates</b>	* =	* = * samfundsomvæltende
<b>Intrigued by</b> political <b>intrigue</b> and <b>intricate intrigues</b> ,	* afværge / forhindre ngt.	* argumentere indvende, protestere
people are intrigued by the <b>intricacy</b> and <b>intricacies</b> of politics.	* fascineret af > * intrigemageri	* indviklede * intriger
	* indviklethed	* indviklede detaljer

**493** It seems the police has **lost all trace of** the traitor

until a **secret closet, bearing traces of** the crime, is found  
together with documents **showing traces of** the crime.

The conspirators have **closeted themselves away**

in the small **room** functioning as a **secret closet**.

The traitor has **been closeted with** the rest of

the **secret society** in order to hold **clandestine** meetings.

Although some of the writing has become **light**,

the **secret documents disclose / reveal collusive** plans.

**10 Countersignatures** on some **countersigned** documents

**prove that** the traitor is **colluding with** some people of

the neighbouring **city state** and its **collusive dependencies**.

**Seen in that light, things** easily **get heavy**.

More noblemen **come under suspicion**.

Some **suspected** noblemen **deny** all **accusations**.

They **strenuously deny** attempting to overthrow the King.

They **strongly deny assisting** in conspiracy .

They **vehemently deny** any **allegation of co(-)operation** in  
conspiracy to assassinate the King **avid for reform**.

**20 Denying the truth, some deny** all **charges against** them.

They repeat their **vehement denials of** the **charges**.

They maintain their **denial that** the **charge** is **true**.

When the truth about he **treacherous** plot to overthrow

the **reformist King is made publicly** and **generally available**,  
it **revolts** all **reformers** and a lot of **moderate citizens**.

People are **appalled at** the traitor's **denial of** his country.

**Committing treason against** the reformist King,

is a **revolting act in / E& to** all **zealous reformists' eyes**.

Having **betrayed** his country, by his despicable **betrayal**,

**30 treachery and treason, this treacherous and traitorous**  
**betrayed and traitor** is nothing but a **revolting wretch**.

A **storm of indignation rises from** among the public.

**Arousing a chorus of indignation, such revolting,**

**treacherous, traitorous, treasonable and treasonous** acts

**provoke a storm of protest**.

**Vehement in their protest, people stage a protest against**  
the **rabid** reactionaries.

People hold an **indignation meeting** in order to

show their **indignant** and **vehement protest**.

\* miste færten af ng.

\* hemmeligt \* privatkammer \* bære > \* spor af ngt.  
~ lønkammer

\* vise >

\* =

\* lukke sig inde ( for at være privat )

\* i > \* rum \* hemmeligt \* privatkammer  
( garderoberum )

\* være lukket inde med ng. ( for at være privat )

\* hemmeligt selskab \* fordækt

\* utydeligt

\* = \* afsløre > \* hemmelig aftalt ( plan )

\* kontra- / dobbeltsignatur \* kontrasigneret /  
dobbeltunderskrevet

\* bevise at - \* være i hemmelig forståelse /  
spille under dække med ng.

\* bystat \* ~ hemmeligt samarbejdende \* lydland

\* set i det lys \* tingene > \* ~ udvikle sig alvorligt /  
truende

\* komme under mistanke

\* mistænkt \* benægte ngt. \* anklage

\* ihærdig, ivrig \* benægte at -

\* på det kraftigste \* ... at - \* medvirke i ngt.

\* lidenskabeligt \* ... > \* påstand om > \* medvirken i ngt.  
heftigt, vrede

\* ivrig efter > \* reform

~ reformivrig

\* fornægte > \*

mod ng.

\* harmdirrende \* afvisning af > \* anklage

\* ... af at - \* anklage \* sand

\* forræderisk

\* reform- \* gjort > \* offentlig \* almindelig \* tilgængelig  
venlig

\* oprøre ng. \* reformator

\* bestyrtet / \* fornægtelse af ngt.  
forfærdet over

\* begå > \* højforræderi mod ng.

\* oprørende \* i > \* ivrig \* ~ reformtilhængers \* øjne  
( handling )

\* forråde / svigte ( land ) \* forræderi, svig

\* = \* ( lands- / konge- ) \* forræderisk \* ( - - )  
forræderi svigefuld forræderisk

\* forræder \* lands-... \* afskyelig \* usling

\* storm af > \* & forargelse \* rejser sig fra ng.  
forbitrelse, harme

\* vække > \* kor af > \* - - - \* afskyelig /  
oprørende >

\* forræderisk > \* lands-... \* = \* = ( handling )

\* fremkalde > \* ~ proteststorm

\* heftig \* i & ~ modstand \* arrangere > \* ~ protest-  
vedholdende aktion mod >

\* rabiat

\* forargelse, harme \* møde

~ protestmøde

\* harmdirrende \* <<< \* =

<b>494 Relations</b> (pl.) <b>with</b> the city state <b>are under strain</b> .	* ~ forholdet til ng. >	* være anstrengt
The King's spokesman <b>refuses to</b> either <b>confirm</b> or <b>deny</b>	* afvise / nægte at -	* bekræfte > * benægte >
a <b>mass</b> of <b>rumours</b> .	* masse / mængde ( af ) >	* rygter
Having read the <b>compromising</b> documents,	* kompromitterende	
the King decides to carry out <b>secret diplomacy</b>	* hemmeligt	* diplomati
<b>in the natural / normal / usual course of events</b> .	* ~ som led i den almindelige fremgangsmåde	
The King wants to improve the <b>relations between</b> the two	* relationerne / forbindelserne mellem ng.	
states <b>with</b> the greatest possible <b>dispatch</b> /E& <b>despatch</b> .	* i en fart	
So the King <b>sets pen to paper</b> .	* sætte > * pen >	* til papir
<b>10 Writing in pen and ink</b> he uses <b>blotting paper</b>	* skrive med > * pen of blæk	* ~ klat-/ trækpapir
in order not to <b>smear</b> the writing.	* tvære ngt. ud	
He takes care not to <b>smudge</b> the writing <b>with</b> his sleeve.	* ... med >	* ærme
When the writing has dried, it won't <b>smear / smudge</b> .	* tværes ud	
Once in a while he <b>raps</b> the table with his pen.	* tromme på ngt.	
The area around the <b>inkpot</b> or <b>inkwell</b> is full of <b>smears</b> .	* blækhus * indbygget ...	* plet
<b>With dispatch</b> , the King writes an <b>in</b> > /E& <b>enquiring</b> letter	* ~ i al hast	* forespørgende
for <b>dispatch</b> in order to <b>get light on</b> the problem.	* afsendelse, besørgelse ( hurtig ) ekspedition	* få kastet lys over
The King <b>fastens</b> an <b>envelope</b> containing some <b>inquiries</b> .	* lukke > fast * konvolut	* forespørgsel
<b>In the natural / normal / usual course of things</b> , a <b>King's</b>	* ~ som det plejer at være	* ~ kongeligt
<b>20 messenger</b> is <b>dispatched</b> ( to the city state ) in order	* sendebud * sendt ng. afsted	* til et sted
to <b>pass</b> ( ) on a <b>message</b> ( from the King ) to the city state.	* viderebringe > * meddelelse ( fra ng. ) til ng.	
<b>Awaiting events</b> , the King expects that	* afvente begivenhedernes gang	
<b>in the natural / normal / usual course of events</b>	* ~ går det, som det plejer / skal	
a peaceful settlement will be found.	*	
The city state replies to the King's letter <b>very quickly / soon</b> .	* meget hurtigt / snart	
When the <b>dispatch carrier</b> , however, <b>hands in</b>	* kurér	* aflevere >
the <b>dispatch</b> from the city state, the King <b>is appalled</b> .	* depeche * være / blive > * bestyrtet, forfærdet	
<b>In the natural / normal / usual course of events</b> ,	* ~ hvis det var gået, som det plejer	
the conflict would have been <b>settled</b> peacefully, but now	* bilæge ( konflikt )	
<b>30</b> the city state has <b>broken off diplomatic relations with</b>	* afbryde > * ( de ) diplomatiske forbindelser med ng.	
the kingdom ( <b>Don't shoot the messenger</b> ! ).	* ~ lad det ikke gå ud over budbringeren	
Diplomatic <b>relations between</b> the two states as well as	* ( de ) << mellem ng.	
other official <b>connections between</b> them are <b>broken off</b> .	* forbindelser mellem ng.	* afbryde <
The King <b>feels</b> a <b>jolt</b> of <b>dismay</b> at the news.	* føle > * en rysten af > * forfærdelse, fortvivlelse	
It <b>jolts</b> the King <b>into deep trouble</b> .	~ blive rystet af >	
The news is <b>greeted with dismay</b> , as <b>storm clouds</b>	* støde, ~ kaste ng. ud i > * ~ svære	* bekymringer
<b>are gathering over</b> the relations between the two states.	* modtaget med > * forfærdelse	* vanskeligheder
Could the reason for the <b>diplomatic rupture</b>	fortvivlelse	* uejrrskyer >
simply be a piece of <b>clumsy diplomacy</b> ?	* samler sig over ngt.	
	* diplomatisk	* brud
	* kluntet	* diplomati

<b>495</b> The King <b>rises</b> , his eyes still <b>fastened on</b> the dispatch.	* rejse sig	* fæstnet på
War is most likely <b>under way</b> .	* på vej, under opsejling, i gang	
The King has <b>come upon quicksand(s)</b> .	* ~ være havnet i en vanskelig situation	
The King is no <b>armchair politician</b> , no <b>armchair hero</b>	* ( lænestols- ) * politiker * ~ skrivebordshelt	
or <b>armchair strategist</b> engaging in <b>armchair speculation(s)</b> .	* ~ skrivebords- pennehelt	
It can't <b>be decided lightly</b> so he <b>sleeps on</b> the problem.	* ~ hjemmefrontsstrateg * ~ skrivebordsfilosofi	
The decision could be one he <b>lives to regret</b> .	* afgøres * ~ uden videre * & tænke over ngt. & ikke nogen let / nem beslutning til næste dag	
Having <b>slept on it</b> and <b>weighed (up)</b> the <b>relative merits</b> of	* ~ komme til at fortryde fremover	
his plans, he realizes he can't <b>afford a policy of wait-and-see</b> .	* sove på det * afveje > * forholdsmæssig * fortrin	
<b>10</b> So he won't <b>wait to see what</b> will happen.	* tillade sig > * politik ⇔ * & afventende	
The King won't <b>wait in order to see</b> what will happen;	* vente og se / se tiden an hvad -	
he won't <b>play a `waiting game</b> so he <b>calls a council of war</b> .	* vente > * for at - * se hvad -	
<b>Everything seems to show that</b> the city state	* ~ stille sig afventende * indkalde til > * krigsråd	
<b>considers retaliatory action / measures</b> .	* indtage en afventende holdning	
<b>There is every indication that</b> the city state	* ~ alt tyde på at -	
<b>is up to armed conflict</b> .	* overveje > * gengældelses- * aktion / foranstaltninger & mod-	
<b>All indications are that</b> the city state <b>mediate</b>	* <<	
an <b>armed struggle against</b> the kingdom.	* ~ pønse på > * væbnet * konflikt	
As there is <b>little support for a waiting game</b> ,	* ~ alle tegn peger på at - * pønse på >	
<b>20</b> and <b>strong support for final countermeasures</b> ,	* væbnet kamp mod ng.	
the King and his <b>crisis staff</b> decide <b>with much regret</b>	* ( kun ) lidt > * opbakning til > * ~ afventende holdning	
to <b>fight a war on / against</b> the <b>unexpected enemy</b> .	* stærk > * = * modforholdsregler	
The <b>air is charged with tension</b> as they have to	* krisestab * med ( megen ) beklagelse	
make a <b>quick, speedy and swift decision</b> .	* udkæmpe > * krig mod > * uventet * fjende uforudset	
After a debate, not intended for <b>public consumption</b> ,	* luften * ladet med > * spænding	
The King and his council <b>grasp the nettle</b> (E).	* hurtig * beslutning	
Agreeing to <b>wage (a) war on / against</b> the city state,	* offentlig * forbrug	
they decide to <b>wage war</b> at once.	* ~ offentlighedens kendskab	
They want to <b>make war</b> immediately in order to <b>forestall</b>	* gribe om nældens rod	
<b>30</b> the enemy's plan.	* ~ gå i gang med noget ubehageligt	
In order to <b>forestall</b> the enemy by <b>force of arms</b> ,	* føre krig mod ng.	
the kingdom <b>mobilizes</b> at once.	* føre krig	
Confident of the army's <b>armament</b> (U),	* = * komme ngt. i forkøbet	
and relying on it's up-to-date <b>armaments</b> ( pl.),	* ~	
the King immediately <b>mobilizes</b> the <b>army</b> in order to	* komme ng. i forkøbet * ~ våbenmagt	
<b>make war against / on</b> the city state as soon as possible.	* mobilisere	
Many weapons had <b>become obsolete / out of date</b>	* oprustning, våbenforsyning	
but fortunately the King's <b>provident</b> Minister of Defence	* beholdning af forskellige våben	
has had their <b>obsolete / out-of-date</b> weapons replaced.	* mobilisere > * hæren	
	* føre krig mod ng.	
	* blive forældet	
	* forudseende	
	* forældet ( våben )	

**496 Giving** their military plan **the green`light**,

the King **gives** the general staff **the green light**.

**Giving the green light to** the general staff,  
he **gives the green light to** immediate **mobilization**.

During the **armament**, while the army is **equipped**  
and **armed for** war, the soldiers prepare themselves  
to **go to a war** and **fight in a war**.

When all the **armed forces mobilize**, the soldiers are  
prepared to **go to the war** and **march on** the city state.

**10** Preparing for a **march on** the enemy, they prepare to  
**go to the wars** and **fight in the war**.

**An army marches on its stomach.**

When the soldiers **go to the war with** the city state  
they leave their loved ones **with a heavy heart**.

The country is **on a war footing**.

In the nobility **it is** the **tradition ( for the sons ) to** choose  
**arms** as their profession.

In the army there's a long **tradition that** the **army officers**  
are recruited from the nobility.

**20** Having **been on the battlefield / <ground, drawn up**  
**in battle array / order**, and **fought on** the **battlefield / < ...**,  
many officers **are experienced** in **war craft** and **warfare**.

**On parade, war heroes** and **war veterans, decorated**  
**for** their bravery or military honour, **wear** their **decorations**,  
i.e. their **medals** and **ribbons**.

A **battle-hardened** soldier **shows a contempt for** danger,  
and an officer must **show a contempt for** his own security.

Most officers have a **hard-handed approach to** disciplin.

They walk around **rapping ( out )** orders.

**30** Once in a while, the soldiers have participated in  
a **war game**, a **simulated** military operation carried out  
to test the **validity** of a war plan or an **operational** concept.

Being a soldier is a job in which a variety of skills  
will be **deployed**.

**Deployment** of talent, skills, and resources is important.

Clever **deployments** of troops and weapons are of  
**decisive strategic(al)** importance.

The kingdom is, **to E/A for all intents and`purposes**,  
**at war: at war with** the city state.

\* ~ give grøntlys for ngt.

\* ... ng.

\* =

\* = \* mobilisering

\* krigsforberedelse \* ( blive ) udstyret >

\* bevæbnet til ( krig )

\* gå i krig \* kæmpe i krig

\* væbnede \* styrker \* mobilisere

\* gå / drage > \* ~ i krig \* marchere mod ngt.

\* march mod ngt.

\* ~ gå i krig / drage i felten \* kæmpe i krigen

\* ~ en hær fungerer på fyldte maver

\* << mod ng.

\* med tungt hjerte

\* på krigsfod

\* det er traditionen ( for ng.) at -

\* ~ militæret

\* tradition for at - \* militær- \* officer  
& officer i hæren

\* være på slagmarken \* opstille ng. >

\* i > \* slagorden \* kæmpet > \* på ...

\* ~ have erfaring ( i > ) \* krigskunst \* krigsførelse

\* ~ ved > \* parade \* krigshelt \* -veteran \* dekoreret >

\* for ngt. \* bære > \* dekorationer

\* medalje \* ordensbånd

\* ~ krigshærdet \* vise > \* foragt for ( fare )  
~ byde ( farer ) trods

\* ~ se stort på ngt.

\* hårdhændet \* tilgang til ngt.

\* udslynge ( ordre )

\*

\* krigsspil \* simuleret, efterlignet

\* gyldighed, brugbarhed \* operationel  
udførelsmæssig

\*

\* anvende / udnytte ( færdigheder )

\* -lse

\* indsættelse, udsendelse  
opstilling

\* afgørende \* strategisk

\* for så vidt, praktisk talt

\* i krig \* ... med ng.



<b>498 Fighting in a / the war, soldiers have a heavy workload.</b>	* kæmpe > * i en krig * have > * tung * arbejdsbyrde / krigen
The privates <b>pull a heavy load physically.</b>	* trække > * et tungt * ~ læs * ~ legemligt set
The privates <b>do the heavy work, such as loading ( up ), unloading, heavy lifting and heavy digging.</b>	* gøre > * det tunge > * arbejde * læsse
<b>It's still dark</b> when the privates start <b>loading (up).</b>	* læsse af * tungt * løfteri * = * graverarbejde
Busy <b>loading (up)</b> various <b>vehicles</b> , the privates	* det er stadig mørkt * laste
<b>groan under</b> the heavy <b>weight</b> when they <b>load handcarts, carts and wag(g)ons (up) with</b> trunks of supplies	* ... > * køretøj
from the <b>stockpiles</b> ( of supplies ) kept in the <b>arms depots.</b>	* stønne / * vægten * laste > * håndvogn
<b>10</b> They <b>load</b> the lighter supply <b>onto horse-drawn carts,</b>	* vånde sig under > * kærre / * firehjulet * med > * rejsekuffert
and <b>load</b> the heavier supply <b>into</b> the bigger wagons	* tohjulet trækvogn lasthestevogn transportkasse
covered with <b>tarpaulins</b> made of <b>heavy-duty canvas.</b>	* beredskabslager * våben- * depot
Soldiers have to work <b>in harness ( with</b> each other ).	* laste ngt. op på ( vogn ) * ~ hestekærre
When the soldiers <b>put a load on</b> a vehicle,	* ... op i ( vogn )
they take care not to <b>overload</b> the vehicle.	* presenning * slidstærkt * kanvas lærredsug
An <b>overloaded</b> vehicle may <b>drop / lose / E shed its load.</b>	* ~ trække på samme hammel
The soldiers <b>make</b> the loads <b>fast,</b> and <b>fasten</b> the <b>tarps</b> (A)	* komme læs på ( køretøj )
( by <b>making</b> strong ropes <b>fast</b> ) to the sides of the vehicles.	* overlæsse / -belaste ngt.
Some goods can only be moved with a mighty <b>heave.</b>	* overlæsset * tabe sin last
<b>20 Heaving</b> goods <b>onto</b> or <b>down from</b> the carriages,	* ~ fastgøre ( læs ) * fastgøre > * presenning
<b>heaving at / on</b> ropes etc., some privates are <b>weighed down.</b>	* ... ( reb ) til ngt.
The officers only <b>do light manuel work.</b>	* bevægelse ( træk / løft / stød )
<b>On the other hand</b> they <b>carry a load of responsibility.</b>	* hive ngt. op på / ned fra ngt.
Some of them <b>are loaded down.</b>	* hive i ( reb ) * ( blive ) overbebyrdet
The war <b>load</b> some officers <b>down with</b> responsibility.	* lave > * let * manuelt * arbejde
They are <b>weighed down with</b> responsibility.	* på den anden side * bære > * en byrde af > * ansvar derimod
Even if the officers <b>carry a burden of</b> responsibility,	* være overbebyrdet
and <b>carry a weight</b> (fig.) <b>on</b> their <b>shoulders,</b> the privates	* overbebyrde ng. med ( ansvar )
and the <b>civilian population bear</b> the main <b>burden of</b> the war.	* overbebyrdet med ngt.
<b>30</b> The <b>troopers harness</b> their <b>troopers.</b>	* være bebyrdet med ngt.
Having put <b>harnesses on</b> the <b>warhorses,</b>	* bære > * en byrde på > * sine skuldre
the troopers <b>harness</b> them <b>to</b> the <b>horse-drawn vehicles.</b>	* civil- * befolkningen * bære ( hoved ) byrden ved > ( krigen )
<b>Linseed / flaxseed oil</b> is used to <b>soften stiff leather strips.</b>	* kavalerist * give seletøj på > * kavaleristhest ~ give ... seletøj på
A <b>warhorse</b> must be accustomed to the <b>turmoil of war</b>	* ( lægge ) seletøj på > * krigshest
so it won't <b>stop ( dead ) / halt ( dead ) / freeze in</b> its <b>tracks.</b>	* spænde ng. for > * hestetrukken * køretøj
<b>Carts and waggons</b> (A -g-) drive to the <b>armouries</b>	* linolie * blødgøre > * stiv * læder * strimmel ~ rem
and <b>arsenals</b> to pick up <b>loads of munitions</b> (pl.): weapons,	* tummel ⇔ * krigs-
<b>ammunition</b> and equipment.	* ~ standse ( meget ) pludseligt, ( blive lamslået )
Warhorses pull the <b>carriages</b> of the <b>light cannons,</b>	* kærre * firehjulet hestevogn * våben- ( tohjulet hestevogn ) ( til tungt gods ) depot
	* arsenal * ladning * krigsmateriel
	* =
	* hjulvogn * let * glds. kanon

<b>499</b> The <b>fast carriages</b> are <b>designed</b> to <b>carry</b> a <b>light load</b> .	* hurtig * firehjulet hestevogn * beregnet * transportere ( til persontransport ) til at- let last
The wagons <b>designed for</b> a <b>heavy burden</b> are slow.	* beregnet til > * tung * byrde, last
<b>Beasts of burden</b> and vehicles must be <b>lightly</b>	* ~ arbejdsdyr * let >
or not too <b>heavily loaded</b> as a <b>beast of burden</b>	* tungt * belæsset, lastet * ~ arbejdsdyr
might not be able to <b>carry</b> or <b>pull</b> the <b>load</b> as well as	* bære > * trække > * læs
the <b>draught animals</b> might be unable to <b>pull</b> the <b>heavy load</b> .	* trækdyr * trække > * tung * =
A beast of burden or the wheels of a carriage might not	*
be able to <b>bear / sustain</b> the <b>weight</b> ( of a burden or load ).	* bære > * vægt ( af ngt. )
The army is prepared to <b>set out at first light</b> the next day.	* begive sig / drage / tage af sted * ~ så snart det bliver lyst
<b>10</b> At ( the <b>first gleam / glimmer</b> of ) <b>`dawn</b> //	* ved daggy * svagt lys ( af > ) * daggy
<b>at the crack</b> of <b>dawn</b> // <b>at the break / crack</b> of <b>day</b> ,	* - - -
when the <b>morning / day dawns</b> , it begins to <b>get light</b> .	* morgenen > * dagen > * gry * det bliver lyst
<b>It gets light at</b> about 6 <b>o'clock</b> about half an hour	* ... klokken x
before <b>sunrise</b> .	* solopgang
Ready to <b>set off / out / ( i-f ) roll</b> as soon as <b>it's light</b> ,	* komme afsted * det er lyst
the army <b>leave</b> in the morning as soon as <b>it gets light</b> .	* tage af sted * det bliver ...
Following the <b>fully loaded / laden</b> vehicles,	* fuldt * lastet
<b>loaded down / weighed down / laden with</b> supplies,	* belæsset / lastet med ( forsyninger )
the soldiers <b>march out</b> ( of the <b>royal town</b> ).	* marchere / drage ud af > * kongelig * by ~ kongebyen
<b>20</b> <b>Loaded down / weighed down / laden with full</b>	* tungt belæsset * med > * fuld >
<b>marching equipment</b> , the soldiers <b>march on</b> the city state.	* march- * ~ oppakning * marchere mod ( sted )
Starting to move along roads towards the <b>hostile</b> city state,	* fjentligsindet
the troops <b>join</b> (E) the <b>roads towards</b> the city state.	* følge > * vejene mod ngt.
Their <b>backs bowed under</b> the <b>weight</b> of their <b>packs</b>	* ryg * bøjet * under vægten af > * oppakning
and <b>battle kits</b> , some privates <b>fall over from exhaustion</b> .	* kamp- * udstyr * falde omkuld af > * udmattelse
<b>Military carriages carry</b> officers <b>backwards and forwards</b>	* militær * person- * transportere ng. * tilbage og frem ig`zå~st\$ên hestevogn
<b>between</b> the <b>front</b> ( line ) and the <b>headquarters</b> ,	* mellem > * front * hovedkvarteret
and wounded soldiers back to a <b>base / camp / field hospital</b> .	* ~ felt- * hospital
Some officers <b>ride in</b> a <b>cart driven by</b> a <b>driver</b> .	* køre i > * kærre * kørt af > * kusk ~ lazaret
<b>30</b> Its woodwork <b>groaning</b> and <b>creaking</b> under its burden,	* knage * knirke
a <b>heavily loaded</b> cart <b>jolts over</b> the rough ground,	* tungt belæsset ( vogn ) * bumle over ngt.
until the <b>loaded-down</b> cart is suddenly <b>fast in</b> the mud.	* ~ overlæsset * ~ sidde fast i ( mudder )
The driver <b>lightens</b> ( the <b>load</b> of ) the <b>loaded-down</b> cart	* gøre > lettere * ~ tungt læsset / lastet ( lette vægten af > )
to <b>lighten</b> the <b>load on</b> the wheels, and make a <b>countermove</b> .	* vægten på ( hjulene ) * modbevægelse
He <b>revolves / rotates / turns</b> the <b>wheel</b> a bit of a <b>counter</b> >	* dreje > * hjul * modomdrejning
<b>turn</b> so it can make a <b>revolution / rotation / turn</b> the right way.	* ( hel ) omdrejning
Having <b>sunk into</b> the mud, the wheels of the now <b>lightly</b>	* sunket ned i ( mudder ) * let >
<b>loaded</b> cart again <b>revolve / rotate on</b> their <b>axles</b> .	* lastet * dreje rundt / rotere om > * aksel
The wheels <b>revolve anti</b> > E/A <b>counterclockwise</b> .	* dreje * mod uret

**ad 415** ) Once, when the driver forgot to **set** the **handbrake**, the car began to **roll**; **rolling away from the kerb** E/A **curb**, it **rolled back down** a **neglected descent** in the street.

**ad 436** ) It's possible to **judge how** far away the lightning is.

You can **judge** the **distance** as the light will reach you practically immediately while it takes the sound about three seconds to travel every kilometre.

**ad 467** ) **Portraying** the **appaling / dreadful living conditions** of the poor, often living **in overcrowded conditions**, the book gives a **devastating portrait / portrayal** of life **under humiliating conditions** in **abject** poverty.

**ad 477** ) Realizing that his arguments are **unsustainable**, the nobleman realizes that they have no **sustainability**.

So arguing further would only **give** further **sustenance** to the King's **arguments**.

\* ~ sætte håndbremsen til

\* rulle / trille \* ... tilbage fra > \* kantsten

\* ... baglæns ned ad > \* overset \* nedskråning i ngt.

\* bedømme hvor -

\* bedømme > \* afstand

\*

\*

\* portrætterere > \* forfærdende \* skrækkelig \* livs-  
betingelser

\* i > \* overbefolkede \* omgivelser

\* sønderlemmende \* portræt \* portrættering af ngt.

\* under \* ydmyg- \* betingelser \* ( i ) ussel ( fattigdom )  
ende

\* uholdbar

\* holdbarhed, styrke

\* give > \* understøttelse / styrke til >

\* argumenter